



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Hebrews**

**Version 27**

# Copyrights & Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 14

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 0.12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 2.1.11

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](http://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](http://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>13</b>
Hebrews	13
Introduction to Hebrews	14
Hebrews 1	16
Hebrews 2	32
Hebrews 3	54
Hebrews 4	75
Hebrews 5	94
Hebrews 6	109
Hebrews 7	130
Hebrews 8	162
Hebrews 9	178
Hebrews 10	210
Hebrews 11	252
Hebrews 12	295
Hebrews 13	329
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>357</b>
Abstract Nouns	358
Active or Passive	360
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	363
Connecting Words and Phrases	366
Direct and Indirect Quotations	370
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	372
Double Negatives	375
Doublet	377
Ellipsis	379
Euphemism	381
Exclamations	383
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	385
Forms of You	387
Generic Noun Phrases	388
How to Translate Names	390
Idiom	394
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	396
Litotes	398
Metaphor	400
Metonymy	406
Nominal Adjectives	408
Numbers	410
Ordinal Numbers	413
Parallelism	415
Personification	418
Pronouns	420

Rhetorical Question	422
Simile	425
Symbolic Action	428
Synecdoche	430
Textual Variants	432
Translating Son and Father	434
When Masculine Words Include Women	436
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>438</b>
Aaron	439
Abel	440
Abraham, Abram	441
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	442
adversary, enemy	443
afflict, affliction, distress	444
age, aged	445
alien, foreign, foreigner	446
altar	447
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...	448
amen, truly	449
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	450
angel, archangel	451
anoint, anointed, anointing	453
apostle, apostleship	454
appoint, appointed	455
ark	456
ash, ashes	457
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	458
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray	459
atonement lid	460
authority	461
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	462
awe, awesome	463
bear, bearer, carry	464
beast	465
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	466
beloved	468
bind, bond, bound	469
birthright	470
blameless	471
bless, blessed, blessing	472
blood	474
boast, boastful	476
body	477
bold, boldness, emboldened	478
bread	479
brother	480

burnt offering, offering by fire	481
Cain	482
call, call out	483
cherub	485
children, child, offspring	486
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	488
Christ, Messiah	489
church, Church	491
citizen, citizenship	493
clean, wash	494
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	496
command, commandment	497
companion, fellow worker, friend	498
compassion, compassionate	499
conceive, conception	500
condemn, condemned, condemnation	501
confess, confession	502
confidence, confident	503
confirm, confirmation, legal	504
conscience	505
consume, devour	506
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	507
covenant	509
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	511
create, created, creation, creator	512
creature, creation	513
cross	514
crown, crowned	515
crucify, crucified	516
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	517
curse, cursed, cursing	519
curtain	520
darkness	521
David	522
day	523
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	524
declare, proclaim, announce	525
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted	526
defile, defiled	527
delight	528
descend, descendant	529
desert, wilderness	530
destroy, destruction, annihilate	531
devour	532
die, dead, deadly, death,	533
discern, discernment, distinguish	535

discipline, self-discipline	536
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious	537
divine	538
doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge	539
earth, earthen, earthly	540
Egypt, Egyptian	541
endure, endurance	542
Enoch	543
envy, covet	544
Esau	545
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	546
evil, wicked, unpleasant	548
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	550
exhort, exhortation	551
exile, exiled	552
exult, exultant	553
face, facial	554
faith	555
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	556
fear, afraid, dread	558
fellowship	559
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	560
firstborn	561
flesh	562
footstool	563
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	564
forsake, forsaken, leave	566
found, founder, foundation	567
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty	568
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	569
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	571
generation	572
Gideon	573
gift	574
glory, glorious, glorify	575
goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids	577
God	578
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	580
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	582
gold, golden	583
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	584
grace, gracious	586
groan, groans, groanings	587
guilt, guilty	588
had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with	589
hand	590

hard, harden, hardness	592
heart	593
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	594
heir	595
high priest, chief priests	596
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	598
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	600
honor	602
hope, hoped	603
house	604
house of God, Yahweh's house	605
household	606
imitate, imitator	607
incense	608
inherit, inheritance, heir	609
iniquity	610
innocent	611
instruct, instruction, instructors	612
intercede, intercession	613
Isaac	614
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	615
Israel, Israelites	616
it is written	617
Jephthah	618
Jericho	619
Jerusalem	620
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	621
Joseph (OT)	623
Joshua	624
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	625
Judah	627
judge	628
judge, judgment	629
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	631
king, kingdom, kingship	633
kingdom	634
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	636
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	638
labor, laborer, work, hard work	639
lampstand	640
last day, latter days	641
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	642
law, principle	644
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness	645
Levi, Levite, Levitical	647
life, live, living, alive	648



like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	650
lion, lioness	651
loins, waist	652
lord, Lord, master, sir	653
love, beloved	655
majesty	657
manna	658
mediator	659
Melchizedek	660
mercy, merciful	661
might, mighty, mighty works	663
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded	664
miracle, wonder, sign	665
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	667
month, monthly	668
Moses	669
Most High	670
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	671
name	672
Noah	673
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	674
obey, obedient	675
oil	676
on high, in the highest	677
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor	678
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared	679
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	680
Passover	681
patient, patience, impatient	682
patriarch	683
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	684
people of God	685
people, people group,	686
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete	688
perish	689
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	690
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	691
power, powerful, powerfully	692
praise, praised, praiseworthy	694
pray, prayer	695
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	696
priest, priesthood	698
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	700
prison, prisoner, imprison	701
profane, profaned	702
profit, profitable, unprofitable	703

promise, promised	704
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	705
propitiation	707
prostitute, harlot, whored	708
prostrate, worship	709
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	710
pure, purify, purification	711
quench, quenched, unquenchable	712
Rahab	713
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up	714
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	716
rebuke	717
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance	718
redeem, redeemer, redemption	720
reed	721
reject, rejected, rejection	722
repent, repentance	723
report, reported, reputation	724
rest, rested, restless	725
resurrection	726
return	727
reveal, revealed, revelation	728
revere, revered, reverence, reverent	729
reward, prize, deserve,	730
right hand	731
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	732
robe, robed	734
rod	735
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows	736
Sabbath	737
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	738
saint	740
Samson	741
Samuel	742
sanctify, sanctification	743
Sarah, Sarai	744
Satan, devil, evil one	745
save, saved, safe, salvation	747
scepter	749
scroll	750
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea	751
seed, semen	752
seek, search, look for	753
send, sent, send out	754
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	755
sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication	757

shadow, overshadow, shade	758
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	759
shepherd, chief shepherd	761
sign, proof, reminder	763
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	764
slaughter, slaughtered	766
son	767
Son of God, the Son	769
sons of God, children of God	771
soul, self	772
spirit, spiritual	773
staff, clubs	775
stone, stoning	776
strength, strengthen, strong	777
subject, be subject to, subjection	779
submit, submission, in submission	780
suffer, suffering	781
sword, swordsmen	783
tabernacle	784
teach, teaching, untaught	785
teacher, Teacher	786
tempt, temptation	787
tent, tentmakers	788
tenth, tithe	789
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	790
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	791
thorn, thorn bush, thistle	793
throne, enthroned	794
time, untimely, date	795
Timothy	796
to minister, ministry	797
transgress, transgression	798
tremble, stagger	799
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	800
tribulation, distresses, trouble	801
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	802
true, truth	803
trumpet, trumpeters	805
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	806
turn, turn away, turn back, return	807
understand, understanding, thinking	809
voice	810
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	811
water	812
will of God	813
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...	814

work, works, deeds	816
world, worldly	817
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	818
wrath, fury	819
year	820
zeal, zealous	821
Zion, Mount Zion	822
<b>Contributors</b>	<b>823</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	823
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	829
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	830
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	830
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	831



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **Hebrews**

## Introduction to Hebrews

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of the Book of Hebrews

1. Jesus is superior to God's prophets and angels (1:1-4:13)
2. Jesus is superior to the priests who serve in the temple in Jerusalem (4:14-7:28)
3. Jesus' ministry is superior to the old covenant that God made with his people (8:1-10:39)
4. What faith is like (11:1-40)
5. Encouragement to be faithful to God (12:1-29)
6. Concluding encouragements and greetings (13:1-25)

#### Who wrote the Book of Hebrews?

No one knows who wrote Hebrews. Scholars have suggested several different people who could possibly be the author. Possible authors are Paul, Luke, and Barnabas. The date of writing is also not known. Most scholars think it was written before A.D. 70. Jerusalem was destroyed in A.D. 70, but the writer of this letter spoke about Jerusalem as if it had not yet been destroyed.

#### What is the Book of Hebrews about?

In the Book of Hebrews, the author shows that Jesus fulfilled Old Testament prophecies. The author did this in order to encourage the Jewish Christians and to explain that Jesus is better than anything that the old covenant had to offer. Jesus is the perfect High Priest. Jesus was also the perfect sacrifice. Animal sacrifices became useless because Jesus' sacrifice was once and for all time. Therefore, Jesus is the one and only way for people to be accepted by God.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Hebrews." Or they may choose a clearer title, such as "The Letter to the Hebrews" or "A Letter to the Jewish Christians." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

#### Can readers understand this book without knowing about the sacrifices and the work of the priests required in the Old Testament?

It would be very difficult for readers to understand this book without understanding these matters. Translators might consider explaining some of these Old Testament concepts in notes or in an introduction to this book.

#### How is the idea of blood used in the Book of Hebrews?

Beginning in Hebrews 9:7, the idea of blood is often used as metonymy to represent the death of any animal that was sacrificed according to God's covenant with Israel. The author also used blood to represent the death of Jesus Christ. Jesus became the perfect sacrifice so that God would forgive people for sinning against him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Beginning in Hebrews 9:19, the author used the idea of sprinkling as a symbolic action. Old Testament priests sprinkled the blood of the animals sacrificed. This was a symbol of the benefits of the animal's death being applied to the people or to an object. This showed that the people or the object was acceptable to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### How are the ideas of “holy” and “sanctify” represented in Hebrews in the ULT?

The scriptures use such words to indicate any one of various ideas. For this reason, it is often difficult for translators to represent them well in their versions. In translating into English, the ULT uses the following principles:

- Sometimes the meaning in a passage implies moral holiness. Especially important for understanding the gospel is the fact that God views Christians as sinless because they are united to Jesus Christ. Another related fact is that God is perfect and faultless. A third fact that Christians are to conduct themselves in a blameless, faultless manner in life. In these cases, the ULT uses “holy,” “holy God,” “holy ones,” or “holy people.”
- Sometimes the meaning indicates a simple reference to Christians without implying any particular role filled by them. In these cases, the ULT uses “believer” or “believers.” (See: 6:10; 13:24)
- Sometimes the meaning implies the idea of someone or something set apart for God alone. In these cases, the ULT uses “sanctify,” “set apart,” “dedicated to,” or “reserved for.” (See: 2:11; 9:13; 10:10, 14, 29; 13:12)

The UST will often be helpful as translators think about how to represent these ideas in their own versions.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Hebrews?

For the following verses, modern versions of the Bible differ from older versions. The ULT text has the modern reading and puts the older reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the general region, translators should consider using the reading found in those versions. If not, translators are advised to follow the modern reading.

- “you crowned him with glory and honor” (2:7). Some older versions read, “you crowned him with glory and honor and you have put him over the works of your hands.”
- “those who did not unite in faith with those who obeyed” (4:2). Some older versions read, “those who heard it without joining faith to it.”
- “Christ came as a high priest of the good things that have come” (9:11). Some modern versions and older versions read, “Christ came as a high priest of the good things that are to come.”
- “on those who were prisoners” (10:34). Some older versions read, “of me in my chains.”
- “They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword” (11:37). Some older versions read, “They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were tempted. They were killed with the sword.”
- “If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned” (12:20). Some older versions read, “If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned or shot with an arrow.”

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

## **Hebrews 1**

### **Hebrews 1 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter describes how Jesus is more important to us than the angels are.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:5, 7-13, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### **“Our ancestors”**

The writer wrote this letter to Christians who had grown up as Jews. This is why the letter is called “Hebrews.”

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Rhetorical questions**

The author uses rhetorical questions as a way of proving Jesus is better than the angels. Both he and the readers know the answers to the questions, and the writer knows that as the readers think about the answers to the questions, they will realize that God’s Son is more important than any of the angels.

##### **Poetry**

Jewish teachers, like the Old Testament prophets, would put their most important teachings in the form of poetry so that the hearers would be able to learn and remember them.



## Hebrews 1:1

### General Information:

Although this letter does not mention the recipients to whom it was sent, the author wrote particularly to Hebrews (Jews), who would have understood the many Old Testament references.

### General Information:

This prologue lays the background for the whole book: the unsurpassing greatness of the Son — the Son is greater than all. The book begins with emphasizing that the Son is better than the prophets and the angels.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [God](#)
- [ancestors](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [prophets to do, say, and write](#)
- [God](#)
- [to our ancestors](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Long ago [God](#) spoke to our [ancestors](#) through the [prophets](#) at many times and in many ways.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> In the past [God](#) communicated [to our ancestors](#) at various times and in many different ways by what he told the [prophets to do, say, and write](#).

## Hebrews 1:2

### But in these last days (ULT)

### But now when this final age is beginning (UST)

“in these final days.” This phrase refers to the time when Jesus began his ministry, extending until God establishes his complete rule in his creation.

### through a Son (ULT)

### by his own Son (UST)

“Son” here is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### he appointed to be the heir of all things (ULT)

### God has chosen...to possess all things (UST)

The author speaks of the Son as if he will inherit wealth and property from his Father. Alternate translation: “to possess all things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Through him, he also made the universe (ULT)

### By him God also created the universe (UST)

“It is through the Son that God also made all things”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a Son](#)
- [he appointed to be](#)
- [last days](#)
- [the heir](#)
- [universe](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [his own Son](#)
- [God has chosen](#)
- [final age is beginning](#)
- [to possess](#)
- [universe](#)
- [age is beginning](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> But in these [last days](#), he has spoken to us through [a Son](#), whom [he appointed to be the heir](#) of all things. Through him, he also made the [universe](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> But now when this [final age is beginning](#), God has communicated to us by [his own Son](#). [God has chosen](#) him [to possess](#) all things. By him God also created the [universe](#).

## Hebrews 1:3

### the brightness of God's glory (ULT) we can see how wonderful God (UST)

"the light of his glory." God's glory is associated with a very bright light. The author is saying that the Son embodies that light and fully represents God's glory.

### glory, the exact representation of his being

"glory, the image of God's being." The "the exact representation of his being" is similar in meaning to "the brightness of God's glory." The Son embodies the character and essence of God and fully represents everything that God is. Alternate translation: "glory and is just like God" or "glory, and what is true about God is true about the Son"

### by the word of his power (ULT) by his powerful commands...he (UST)

"his powerful word." Here "word" refers to a message or command. Alternate translation: "his powerful command" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### After he had made cleansing for sins (ULT) After...sacrificed himself to take away people's sins (UST)

The abstract noun "cleansing" can be expressed as a verb: "making clean." Alternate translation: "After he had finished making us clean from sins" or "After he had finished purifying us from our sins" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### After he had made cleansing for sins (ULT) After...sacrificed himself to take away people's sins (UST)

The author speaks of forgiving sins as if it were making a person clean. Alternate translation: "he had made it possible for God to forgive our sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high (ULT) he rose into heaven...sat down at the highest place of honor, where he rules with God as king (UST)

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the Majesty on high" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### the right hand of the Majesty on high (ULT) he rose into heaven...at the...highest place of honor...where he rules with God as king (UST)

Here "Majesty" refers to God. Alternate translation: "God Most High" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for sins](#)
- [of...power](#)
- [cleansing](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He is the brightness of God's [glory](#) and the exact representation of his being. He holds everything together by the word of his [power](#). After he had made [cleansing for sins](#), he sat down at [the right hand](#) of the [Majesty on high](#).

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> By looking at God's Son, we can see [how wonderful God](#) is. He shows exactly what God is truly like. He sustains everything by his [powerful](#) commands. After he sacrificed himself [to take away people's sins](#), [he rose into heaven](#) and sat down at the [highest place of honor](#), [where he rules with God as king](#).

- glory
- the right hand
- Majesty
- on high

### Translation Words - UST

- people's sins
- powerful
- to take away
- how wonderful God
- highest place of honor
- rules with God as king
- he rose into heaven...at...where he

## Hebrews 1:4

### General Information:

The first prophetic quotation (You are my son) comes from the Psalms. The prophet Samuel wrote the second one (I will be a father to him). All occurrences of "he" refer to Jesus, the Son. The word "You" refers to Jesus, and the words "I" and "me" refer to God the Father.

### He has become (ULT)

### By doing that he demonstrated that he is as (UST)

"The Son has become"

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He has become far superior to the [angels](#) just as [he has inherited a name that](#) is more excellent than their name.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> By doing that he demonstrated that he is as much greater than the [angels as the name that God has given him](#), 'Son of God,' is greater than theirs."

**just as he has inherited a name that is more excellent than their name (ULT)**  
**than...as the name that God has given him, 'Son of God,' is greater than theirs (UST)**

Here "name" refers to honor and authority. Alternate translation: "as the honor and authority he has inherited is superior to their honor and authority" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he has inherited (ULT)

### that God has given him (UST)

The author speaks of receiving honor and authority as if he were inheriting wealth and property from his father. Alternate translation: "he has received" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [he has inherited](#)
- [a name that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [that God has given him](#)
- [as the name...Son of God](#)

## Hebrews 1:5

**For to which of the angels did God ever say, "You are my son...a son to me (ULT)**

**In the scriptures no one ever reported that God said to any angel what he said to his Son: "You are my Son...to me a Son (UST)**

This question emphasizes that God does not call any angel his son. Alternate translation: "For God never said to any of the angels 'You are my son...a son to me.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**You are my son...I...have become your father (ULT)**

**You are my Son...I...have declared to all that...your Father (UST)**

These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [son](#)
- [a son](#)
- [a father](#)
- [have become...father](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [Son](#)
- [a Son](#)
- [Father](#)
- [have declared to all that...Father](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For to which of the [angels](#) did God ever say, "You are my [son](#), today I [have become](#) your [father](#)"? Or again, "I will be [a father](#) to him, and he will be [a son](#) to me"?

### UST

<sup>5</sup> In the scriptures no one ever reported that God said to any [angel](#) what he said to his Son: "You are my [Son](#)! Today I [have declared to all that](#) I am your [Father](#)!" And he never said about any angel what he said in another scripture passage about his Son: "I will be his [Father](#), and he will be to me [a Son](#)."

## Hebrews 1:6

### General Information:

The first quotation in this section, “All God’s angels...him,” comes from one of the books that Moses wrote. The second quotation, “He is the one who makes...fire,” is from the Psalms.

### the firstborn (ULT)

### his honored Son, his only Son (UST)

This means Jesus. The author refers to him as the “firstborn” to emphasize the Son’s importance and authority over everyone else. It does not imply that there was a time before Jesus existed or that God has other sons like Jesus. Alternate translation: “his honored Son, his only Son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he says (ULT)

### he commanded (UST)

“God says”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [God’s](#)
- [world](#)
- [Let...worship](#)
- [firstborn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the angels](#)
- [of God](#)
- [world](#)
- [must worship](#)
- [his honored Son, his only Son](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But again, when God brings the [firstborn](#) into the [world](#), he says, “Let all [God’s angels worship](#) him.”

### UST

<sup>6</sup> And again, when he brings [his honored Son, his only Son](#), into the [world](#), he commanded: “All [the angels of God must worship](#) him.”

## Hebrews 1:7

**He is the one who makes his angels spirits, and his servants flames of fire (ULT)**  
**the...God has made his angels to be like winds, and his ministers who serve him to be like flames of fire (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "God has made his angels to be spirits who serve him with power like flames of fire" or 2) God makes the wind and flames of fire his messengers and servants. In the original language the word for "angel" is the same as "messenger," and the word for "spirits" is the same as "wind." With either possible meaning, the point is that the angels serve the Son because he is superior. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [angels](#) (2)
- [servants](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [of fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [angels](#) (2)
- [ministers who serve him](#)
- [to be like winds](#)
- [of fire](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> About the [angels](#) he says, "He is the one who makes his [angels spirits](#), and his [servants](#) flames [of fire](#)."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> And in the scriptures he said about the [angels](#): "God has made his [angels to be like winds](#), and his [ministers who serve him](#) to be like flames [of fire](#)."



## Hebrews 1:8

### General Information:

This scriptural quotation comes from the Psalms.

**But to the Son he says (ULT)**

**But in the scriptures, he also said about...s Son...God (UST)**

"But God says this to the Son"

**the Son (ULT)**

**s Son...God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**Your throne, God, is forever and ever (ULT)**

**God...You who are...will rule forever (UST)**

The Son's throne represents his rule. Alternate translation: "You are God, and your reign will last forever and ever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**The...scepter of your kingdom is the scepter of justice (ULT)**

**you will reign justly over your kingdom (UST)**

Here "scepter" refers to the Son's rule. Alternate translation: "And you will rule over the people of your kingdom with justice" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of justice
- God
- Son
- of...kingdom
- throne
- scepter
- is the scepter (2)
- forever
- and ever

### Translation Words - UST

- justly
- God
- s Son...God
- kingdom
- will rule
- you will reign
- over (2)
- forever
- forever

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But to the [Son](#) he says, "Your [throne](#), [God](#), is [forever and ever](#). The [scepter](#) of your [kingdom is the scepter of justice](#)."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> But in the scriptures, he also said about [God's Son](#): "You who are [God will rule forever](#), and [you will reign justly over](#) your [kingdom](#)."

## Hebrews 1:9

**has anointed you...with the oil of joy more than your companions (ULT)**

**has caused you to be...more joyful than anyone else besides you (UST)**

Here "oil of joy" refers to the joy that the Son felt when God honored him. Alternate translation: "has honored you and made you more joyful than anyone else" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [righteousness](#)
- [You have loved](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [has anointed](#)
- [lawlessness](#)
- [with the oil](#)
- [companions](#)
- [of joy](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people's righteous deeds](#)
- [You have loved](#)
- [God](#)
- [worship \(2\)](#)
- [has caused...to be](#)
- [people's sinful deeds](#)
- [more joyful](#)
- [anyone else besides](#)
- [more joyful](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [You have loved righteousness](#) and hated [lawlessness](#). Therefore [God](#), your [God](#), [has anointed](#) you [with the oil of joy](#) more than your [companions](#)."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [You have loved people's righteous deeds](#) and you have hated [people's sinful deeds](#). So [God](#), whom you [worship](#), [has caused](#) you [to be more joyful](#) than [anyone else besides](#) you."

## Hebrews 1:10

### General Information:

This quotation comes from another Psalm.

### Connecting Statement:

The author continues explaining that Jesus is superior to the angels.

### In the beginning (ULT) it was...in the beginning (UST)

"Before anything existed"

### laid the earth's foundation (ULT) who created the earth (UST)

The author speaks of God creating the earth as if he built a building on a foundation. Alternate translation: "you created the earth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### The heavens are...the work...of your hands (ULT) You also made the rest of the universe, the stars...everything in the sky (UST)

Here "hands" refer to God's power and action. Alternate translation: "You made the heavens" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the work](#)
- [hands](#)
- [laid...foundation](#)
- [earth's](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [rest of the universe, the stars...everything in...sky](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [You also made the](#)
- [You also made the](#)
- [who created](#)
- [earth](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> "In the beginning, [Lord](#), you [laid](#) the [earth's foundation](#). The [heavens](#) are [the work](#) of your [hands](#)."

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> We also know that his Son is superior to angels because someone wrote, "[Lord](#), it was you [who created](#) the [earth](#) in the beginning. [You also made the rest of the universe, the stars](#) and [everything in](#) the [sky](#)."

## Hebrews 1:11

### They will perish (ULT)

### Those things will no longer exist (UST)

“The heavens and earth will disappear” or “The heavens and earth will no longer exist”

### will...wear out like a piece of clothing (ULT)

### as clothing wears out (UST)

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a piece of clothing that will get old and eventually become useless. (See: [Simile](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will perish](#)
- [like](#)
- [a piece of clothing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [will no longer exist](#)
- [as](#)
- [clothing](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> They [will perish](#), but you will continue. They will all wear out [like a piece of clothing](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Those things [will no longer exist](#), but you will keep on living forever. They will all wear out [as clothing](#) wears out.

## Hebrews 1:12

**You will roll them up...like...a cloak (ULT)**  
**will roll them up like a cloth...if they were (UST)**

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were a robe or another kind of outer garment. (See: [Simile](#))

**and they will be changed like a piece of clothing (ULT)**  
**as...old clothes. Then...will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes (UST)**

The author speaks of the heavens and earth as if they were clothing that could be exchanged for other clothing. (See: [Simile](#))

**they will be changed (ULT)**  
**will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will change them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your...years...do not end (ULT)**  
**you live forever (UST)**

Periods of time are used to represent God's eternal existence. Alternate translation: "your life will never end" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a cloak
- years
- like
- like
- a piece of clothing

### Translation Words - UST

- a cloth
- you live forever
- like...if they were
- as
- old clothes

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> You will roll them up [like a cloak](#), and they will be changed [like a piece of clothing](#). But you are the same, and your [years](#) do not end."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> You will roll them up [like a cloth](#), [as if they were old clothes](#). Then you will change all that is in the universe for something new, like someone putting on new clothes. But you stay the same, and [you live forever](#)!"

## Hebrews 1:13

### General Information:

This quotation comes from another Psalm.

**But to which of the angels has God said at any time...  
for your feet (ULT)  
God has never said to any angel what he said to his  
Son...your...to rule over them (UST)**

The author uses a question to emphasize that God has never said this to an angel. Alternate translation: "But God has never said to an angel at any time...feet." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Sit at my right hand (ULT)  
Sit in...most important place next to me and rule with  
me (UST)**

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**until I make your enemies a stool for your feet (ULT)  
the...while I defeat all of your enemies for you to rule over them (UST)**

Christ's enemies are spoken of as if they will become an object on which a king rests his feet. This image represents defeat and dishonor for his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [a stool](#)
- [enemies](#)
- [at any time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angel](#)
- [most important place next to...and rule with me](#)
- [I defeat all of](#)
- [enemies](#)
- [God has never](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But to which of the [angels](#) has God said [at any time](#), "Sit at my [right hand](#) until I make your [enemies a stool](#) for your feet"?

### UST

<sup>13</sup> [God has never](#) said to any [angel](#) what he said to his Son: "Sit in the [most important place next to](#) me [and rule with me](#) while [I defeat all of](#) your [enemies](#) for you to rule over them!"

## Hebrews 1:14

**Are not all angels spirits...to care...inherit salvation (ULT)**

**angels are only spirits...serve and care for...save completely, as he has promised to do for them (UST)**

The author uses this question to remind the readers that angels are not as powerful as Christ, but they have a different role. Alternate translation: "All angels are spirits who...inherit salvation." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**for those who will inherit salvation (ULT)**

**The...to...believers whom God will soon save completely, as he has promised to do for them (UST)**

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "for those whom God will save" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Are not all angels [spirits who serve](#), and [who are sent to care](#) for those who will [inherit salvation](#)?

### UST

<sup>14</sup> The angels are only [spirits whom God has sent](#) out to [serve and care for](#) believers whom God will soon [save completely, as he has promised to do for them](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [salvation](#)
- [inherit](#)
- [to care](#)
- [who serve](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [who are sent](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [save completely](#)
- [as he has promised to do for them](#)
- [serve and care for](#)
- [whom God has sent](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [whom God has sent](#)

## **Hebrews 2**

### **Hebrews 2 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is about how Jesus is better than Moses, the greatest Israelite.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 2:6-8, 12-13, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Brothers**

The author probably uses the term “brothers” to refer to Christians who grew up as Jews.



## Hebrews 2:1

### Connecting Statement:

This is the first of five urgent warnings the author gives.

**must...we (ULT)**

**So, since...true, we must...we (UST)**

Here “we” refers to the author and includes his audience. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**so that we do not drift away from it (ULT)**

**so that we do not gradually stop believing it (UST)**

Possible meanings for this metaphor are 1) people who stop believing in God’s word are spoken of as if they were drifting away, like a boat drifts from its position in the water. Alternate translation: “so that we do not stop believing it” or 2) people who stop obeying God’s words are spoken of as if they were drifting away, like a boat drifts from its position in the water. Alternate translation: “so that we do not stop obeying it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore we must give far more attention to what we have heard, so that we do not drift away from it.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> So, since that is true, we must pay very great attention to what we have heard about God’s Son, so that we do not gradually stop believing it.

## Hebrews 2:2

**For if the message...spoken through the angels (ULT)**  
**When the angels spoke God's law to the people of Israel, what they said (UST)**

The Jews believed that God spoke his law to Moses through angels. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For if the message that God spoke through the angels" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**For if the...message (ULT)**  
**When...what they said (UST)**

The author is certain that these things are true. Alternate translation: "Because the message"

**every trespass and disobedience receives just punishment (ULT)**  
**God justly punished...all who...disobeyed him and violated his law (UST)**

Here "trespass" and "disobedience" stand for the people who are guilty of these sins. Alternate translation: "every person who sins and disobeys will receive just punishment" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**trespass and disobedience (ULT)**  
**disobeyed him and violated his law (UST)**

These two words mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the angels](#)
- [just](#)
- [trespass](#)
- [receives](#)
- [disobedience](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the angels](#)
- [God justly punished](#)
- [violated his law](#)
- [God justly punished](#)
- [disobeyed him](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For if the message that was spoken through [the angels](#) proved to be so reliable, and every [trespass](#) and [disobedience receives just](#) punishment,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When [the angels](#) spoke God's law to the people of Israel, what they said was valid. [God justly punished](#) all who [disobeyed him](#) and [violated his law](#).

## Hebrews 2:3

**how then can we escape if we ignore so great a salvation (ULT)**

**We will certainly not escape God. He will certainly punish those who ignore such an important message about how he saves us (UST)**

The author uses a question to emphasize that the people will certainly receive punishment if they refuse God's salvation through Christ. Alternate translation: "then God will certainly punish us if we do not pay attention to his message about how God will save us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**if we ignore (ULT)**  
**those who ignore (UST)**

"pay no attention to" or "consider unimportant"

**This salvation was first announced by the Lord and confirmed to us by those who heard it (ULT)**

**It was the Lord Jesus who first told us about this, and the disciples who heard him have assured us that he did so (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. The abstract noun "salvation" can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: "The Lord himself first announced the message about how God will save us and then those who heard the message confirmed it to us" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a salvation](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [was...announced](#)
- [and confirmed](#)
- [was...announced](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [about how he saves us](#)
- [It was...Lord Jesus](#)
- [told us about this](#)
- [have assured us that he did so](#)
- [told us about this](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> how then can we escape if we ignore so great [a salvation](#)? This salvation was first [announced](#) by the [Lord and confirmed](#) to us by those who heard it.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> We will certainly not escape God. He will certainly punish those who ignore such an important message [about how he saves us](#). [It was](#) the [Lord Jesus](#) who first [told us about this](#), and the disciples who heard him [have assured us that he did so](#).

## Hebrews 2:4

**according to his will (ULT)**  
**just as he desires (UST)**

“in just the way he wanted to do it”

### Translation Words - ULT

- by signs
- powerful deeds
- Holy
- God
- testified to it
- the gifts of the Holy Spirit
- his...will
- wonders

### Translation Words - UST

- also...that prove these things are true
- by giving believers power to do mighty deeds
- Holy
- God
- confirmed to us that this message was true
- the Holy Spirit
- he desires
- also...that prove these things are true

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> God also testified to it by signs,  
wonders, and various powerful deeds,  
 and by distributing the gifts of the Holy  
Spirit according to his will.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> God also confirmed to us that this  
message was true by giving believers  
power to do mighty deeds that prove  
these things are true. And the Holy  
Spirit also gives many gifts just as he  
desires to distribute them.

## Hebrews 2:5

### General Information:

The quotation here is from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament. It continues on through the next section.

### Connecting Statement:

The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that the earth will one day be under the rule of the Lord Jesus.

### For it was not to the angels that God subjected (ULT)

“For God did not make the angels rulers over”

### the world that is to come (ULT)

### the new world he will make...the (UST)

Here “world” refers to the people who live there. And “to come” means that this is the world in the next age after Christ returns. Alternate translation: “the people who will live in the new world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to the angels](#)
- [world](#)
- [that God subjected](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the angels](#)
- [new world](#)
- [God has...put...in charge of](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For it was not [to the angels that God subjected](#) the [world](#) that is to come, about which we are speaking.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [God has](#) not [put the angels in charge of](#) the [new world](#) he will make. That is the new world about which we are speaking.

## Hebrews 2:6

**What is man, that you are mindful of him (ULT)**  
**No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him (UST)**

This rhetorical question emphasizes the insignificance of humans and expresses surprise that God would pay attention to them. Alternate translation: "Humans are insignificant, and yet you are mindful of them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Or a son of man, that you care for him (ULT)**  
**No human is worthy enough for you to care for him (UST)**

The idiom "son of man" refers to human beings. This rhetorical question means basically the same thing as the first question. It expresses surprise that God would care for humans, who are insignificant. Alternate translation: "Human beings are of little importance, and yet you care for them!" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Or a son of man (ULT)**  
**No human is worthy enough (UST)**

The verb may be supplied from the previous question. Alternate translation: "Or what is a son of man" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a son](#)
- [has...testified](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [human](#)
- [solemnly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Instead, someone has somewhere [testified](#), saying, "What is man, that you are mindful of him? Or [a son](#) of man, that you care for him?"

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Someone [solemnly](#) spoke to God about this somewhere in the scriptures, saying, "No human being is worthy enough for you to think about him! No [human](#) is worthy enough for you to care for him!"

## Hebrews 2:7

**You made him a little lower than the angels (ULT)**  
**You created humans a little less important than the angels (UST)**

The author speaks of people being less important than angels as if the people are standing in a position that is lower than the angels' position. Alternate translation: "less important than the angels" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**You made him...lower...you crowned him (ULT)**  
**You created humans...less...you have...them, as people honor kings (UST)**

Here, these phrases do not refer to a specific person but to humans in general, including both males and females. Alternate translation: "made humans...crowned them" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**you crowned him with glory and honor (ULT)**  
**Yet you have greatly honored them, as people honor kings (UST)**

The gifts of glory and honor are spoken of as if they were a wreath of leaves placed on the head of a victorious athlete. Alternate translation: "you have given them great glory and honor" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the angels](#)
- [honor](#)
- [with glory](#)
- [you crowned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the angels](#)
- [Yet...greatly honored](#)
- [Yet...greatly honored](#)
- [you have...as people honor kings](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> You made him a little lower than [the angels](#); [you crowned](#) him [with glory](#) and [honor](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> You created humans a little less important than [the angels](#), [Yet you have greatly honored](#) them, [as people honor kings](#).

## Hebrews 2:8

### his feet...to him (ULT)

### Mankind will rule over...from him (UST)

Here, these phrases do not refer to a specific person but to humans in general, including both males and females. Alternate translation: "their feet...to them" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### You put everything in subjection under his feet (ULT)

### You have put everything under their control." Mankind will rule over (UST)

The author speaks of humans having control over everything as if they have stepped on everything with their feet. Alternate translation: "You have given them control over everything" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he did not leave anything not subjected to him (ULT)

### means that nothing will be left out from him...ruling (UST)

This double negative means that all things will be subject to Christ. Alternate translation: "God made everything subject to them" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### everything...of all things...to him...we do not yet see...subjected (ULT)

### everything...everything...from him...we do not see...over (UST)

"we know that humans are not in control of everything yet"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [You put...in subjection](#)
- [subjection...to him](#)
- [subjected](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [You have put...their control](#)
- [ruling it](#)
- [over](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [You put](#) everything [in subjection](#) under his feet." For with the [subjection](#) of all things [to him](#), he did not leave anything not subjected to him. But now we do not yet see everything [subjected](#) to him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [You have put](#) everything under [their control](#)." Mankind will rule over everything. That means that nothing will be left out from him [ruling it](#). But now, at this present time, we do not see mankind ruling [over](#) everything.



## Hebrews 2:9

### Connecting Statement:

The writer reminds these Hebrew believers that Christ became lower than the angels when he came to earth to suffer death for forgiveness of sins, and that he became a merciful high priest to believers.

#### we see Jesus (ULT)

#### we do know about Jesus (UST)

“we know there is one”

#### was made lower (ULT)

#### as...less (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom God made” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### was made lower than the angels...crowned with glory and honor (ULT)

#### as...less...than the angels...and...God has made him the most important of all. He has made Jesus king over everything (UST)

See how you translated these words in [Hebrews 2:7](#).

#### he might taste death (ULT)

#### because Jesus died...that this happened (UST)

The experience of death is spoken of as if it were food that people can taste. Alternate translation: “he might experience death” or “he might die” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by...grace](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the angels](#)
- [God's](#)
- [honor](#)
- [with glory](#)
- [and death](#)
- [death \(2\)](#)
- [suffering](#)
- [crowned](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [was so kind to us](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the angels](#)
- [God](#)
- [He has made Jesus king over everything](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But we see [Jesus](#), who was made lower than [the angels](#) for a little while, [crowned with glory](#) and [honor](#) because of his [suffering and death](#), so that by [God's grace](#) he might taste [death](#) for everyone.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> However, we do know about [Jesus](#), who appeared in this life as a little less important than [the angels](#). Because [he suffered](#) and [died](#), [God has made him the most important of all](#). [He has made Jesus king over everything, because Jesus died](#) for everyone. It was because [God was so kind to us](#) that this happened.

- God has made him the most important of all
- died
- because Jesus died (2)
- he suffered
- He has made Jesus king over everything

## Hebrews 2:10

### in bringing many sons to glory (ULT)

### that he brought many children to share his glory (UST)

The gift of glory is spoken of here as if it were a place to which people could be brought. Alternate translation: "save many sons" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### many sons (ULT)

### many children (UST)

Here this refers to believers in Christ, including males and females. Alternate translation: "many believers" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### the leader of their salvation (ULT)

### that he brought...the one who saved them (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is a metaphor in which the writer speaks of salvation as if it were a destination and of Jesus as the person who goes before the people on the road and leads them to salvation. Alternate translation: "the one who leads people to salvation" or 2) the word translated here as "leader" can mean "founder" and the author speaks of Jesus as the one who establishes salvation, or makes it possible for God to save people. Alternate translation: "the one who makes their salvation possible" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to make...complete (ULT)

### God showed that...was perfect (UST)

Becoming mature and completely trained is spoken of as if a person were made complete, perhaps complete in all his body parts. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [of...salvation](#)
- [sons](#)
- [glory](#)
- [to make...complete](#)
- [his sufferings](#)
- [leader](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [who saved](#)
- [children](#)
- [share his glory](#)
- [God showed that...was perfect](#)
- [suffering](#)
- [the one](#)

## ULT

<sup>10</sup> For it was proper for him, for whom everything exists and through whom everything exists, in bringing many [sons](#) to [glory](#), to [make](#) the [leader](#) of their [salvation complete](#) through [his sufferings](#).

## UST

<sup>10</sup> Since by him all things exist and all things are for him, it was proper that he brought many [children](#) to [share his glory](#). By means of his [suffering God showed that the one who saved them was perfect](#).

## Hebrews 2:11

### General Information:

This prophetic quotation comes from a Psalm of King David.

**the one...who sanctifies (ULT)**

**Jesus, the one who...sets his people apart...God (UST)**

“the one who makes others holy” or “the one who makes others pure from sin”

**those who are sanctified (ULT)**

**those same people whom God declares as good before him...the (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom he makes holy” or “those whom he makes pure from sin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**have one source (ULT)**

**from...same source, God himself (UST)**

Who that source is can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “have one source, God himself” or “have the same Father” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**he is not ashamed (ULT)**

**is not embarrassed (UST)**

“Jesus is not ashamed”

**he is not ashamed to call them brothers (ULT)**

**is not embarrassed to proclaim them to be his own brothers and sisters (UST)**

This double negative means that he will claim them as his brothers. Alternate translation: “is pleased to call them his brothers” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**brothers (ULT)**

**to be his own brothers and sisters (UST)**

Here this refers to all who have believed in Jesus, including both men and women. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to call
- brothers
- who sanctifies
- who are sanctified
- have one source
- he is...ashamed

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For both the one [who sanctifies](#) and those [who are sanctified](#) all [have one source](#). For this reason, [he is](#) not [ashamed to call](#) them [brothers](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> Jesus, the one who [sets his people apart](#) for [God](#), and also [those same people whom God declares as good before him](#), are all from the [same source, God himself](#). So Jesus is not [embarrassed to proclaim](#) them [to be his own brothers and sisters](#).

## Translation Words - UST

- to proclaim
- to be his own brothers and sisters
- sets his people apart...God
- those same people whom God declares as good before him
- same source, God himself
- is...embarrassed

## Hebrews 2:12

**I will proclaim your name to my brothers (ULT)**  
**I will proclaim to my brothers how awesome you are (UST)**

Here "name" refers to the person's reputation and what they have done. Alternate translation: "I will proclaim to my brothers the great things you have done" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from inside the assembly (ULT)**  
**in the middle of the assembly of believers (UST)**

"when believers come together to worship God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to...brothers](#)
- [name](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [I will proclaim](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brothers](#)
- [how awesome](#)
- [assembly of believers](#)
- [I will proclaim to](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He says, "[I will proclaim](#) your [name](#) to my [brothers](#), I will sing about you from inside [the assembly](#)."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> The psalmist wrote that the Messiah said to God, "[I will proclaim to](#) my [brothers how awesome](#) you are. I will sing praise to you in the middle of the [assembly of believers](#)!"

## Hebrews 2:13

### General Information:

The prophet Isaiah wrote these quotations.

#### And again (ULT)

#### And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what the Messiah said about God (UST)

"And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what Christ said about God:"

#### the children (ULT)

#### the children (UST)

This speaks about those who believe in Christ as if they were children. Alternate translation: "those who are like my children" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [trust](#)
- [children](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [trust](#)
- [children](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> And again, "I will [trust](#) in him." And again, "See, here am I and the [children](#) whom [God](#) has given me."

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> And a prophet wrote in another scripture passage what the Messiah said about God: "I will [trust](#) him." And in another scripture passage, the Messiah said about those who are his children, "I and the [children](#) whom [God](#) has given me are here."

## Hebrews 2:14

### the children (ULT)

### his children...The (UST)

This speaks about those who believe in Christ as if they were children. Alternate translation: “those who are like my children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### share in flesh and blood (ULT)

### those whom God calls...are all human beings (UST)

The phrase “flesh and blood” refers to people’s human nature. Alternate translation: “are all human beings” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he...likewise shared in the same (ULT)

### Jesus also became a human being just like them...the (UST)

“Jesus in the same way shared in flesh and blood” or “Jesus became human in the same way they did”

### through death (ULT)

### by his dying (UST)

Here “death” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “by dying” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### who has the power of death (ULT)

### devil...has...power to cause people...to be afraid to die (UST)

Here “death” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “has the power to cause people to die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [power](#)
- [blood](#)
- [devil](#)
- [children](#)
- [he might abolish](#)
- [death](#)
- [of death](#) (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- [are all human beings](#)
- [devil...power to cause people](#)
- [are all human beings](#)
- [devil](#)
- [his children](#)
- [Jesus was able to defeat death...make...powerless](#)
- [dying](#)

## ULT

<sup>14</sup> Therefore, since the [children](#) share in [flesh](#) and [blood](#), he likewise shared in the same, so that through [death](#) [he might abolish](#) the one who has the [power of death](#), that is, the [devil](#).

## UST

<sup>14</sup> So since those whom God calls [his children are all human beings](#), Jesus also became a human being just like them. The [devil](#) has the [power to cause people to be afraid to die](#). So that by his [dying](#), [Jesus was able to defeat death](#) and [make](#) the [devil powerless](#).



- to be afraid to die (2)

## Hebrews 2:15

**This was so that he would free...those who all their lives were subject to slavery by their fear of death (ULT) to free all of us who, all our lives, could not rid ourselves of a fear of dying (UST)**

The fear of death is spoken of as if it were slavery. Taking away someone's fear is spoken of as if it were freeing that person from slavery. Alternate translation: "This was so he might free all people. For we lived like slaves because we were afraid of dying" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lives](#)
- [their fear](#)
- [of death](#)
- [to slavery](#)
- [This was so that he would free](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lives](#)
- [a fear of](#)
- [dying](#)
- [could not rid ourselves of](#)
- [free](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> [This was so that he would free](#) those who all their [lives](#) were subject [to slavery](#) by [their fear of death](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Jesus did this in order to [free](#) all of us who, all our [lives](#), [could not rid ourselves of a fear of dying](#).

## Hebrews 2:16

**with the seed of Abraham (ULT)**  
**who trust God as Abraham did (UST)**

Descendants of Abraham are spoken of as if they were his seed.  
 Alternate translation: "the descendants of Abraham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with angels](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [with the seed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [who trust God as...did](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For of course it is not [with angels](#) that he is concerned; instead, it is [with the seed of Abraham](#) that he is concerned.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> For it is not [angels](#) that he has come to help. No, it is us [who trust God as Abraham did](#) whom he wants to help.

## Hebrews 2:17

**it was necessary for him (ULT)  
God had to (UST)**

“it was necessary for Jesus”

**to become like his brothers (ULT)  
his human “brothers.” He became (UST)**

Here “brothers” refers to people in general. Alternate translation:  
“like human beings”

**in order to make propitiation for the sins of the people (ULT)  
could make a way for God to forgive the people’s sins (UST)**

Christ’s death on the cross means that God can forgive sins.  
Alternate translation: “he would make it possible for God to forgive people’s sins”

### Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- brothers
- of God
- a merciful
- make propitiation
- faithful
- high priest
- people
- to become like

### Translation Words - UST

- sins
- his human...brothers
- God
- mercifully to...people
- could make a way for God...forgive
- who acts faithfully
- a high priest who
- people’s
- He became

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> So it was necessary for him to become like his brothers in all ways, so that he would be a merciful and faithful high priest concerning the things of God in order to make propitiation for the sins of the people.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> So God had to make Jesus to be exactly like us, like his human “brothers.” He became a high priest who acts mercifully to the people and who acts faithfully for God, so he could make a way for God to forgive the people’s sins.

## Hebrews 2:18

### and was tempted (ULT)

### and was tempted (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Satan tempted him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### those who are tempted (ULT)

### are tempted to sin (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom Satan is tempting" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- and was tempted
- those who are tempted
- he is able
- he...has suffered

### Translation Words - UST

- and was tempted
- are tempted to sin
- Jesus is able
- suffered

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For since [he](#) himself [has suffered and was tempted](#), [he is able](#) to help [those who are tempted](#).

2:7 <sup>[1]</sup> Some older version add *and you have put him over the works of your hands*.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [Jesus is able](#) to help those who [are tempted to sin](#) because he himself [suffered and was tempted](#).

## **Hebrews 3**

### **Hebrews 3 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 3:7-11,15, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Brothers**

The author probably uses the term “brothers” to refer to Christians who grew up as Jews.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Harden your hearts**

A person who hardens his heart is a person who will not listen to or obey God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

##### **Rhetorical questions**

The author uses rhetorical questions as a way of warning his readers. Both he and the readers know the answers to the questions, and the writer knows that as the readers think about the answers to the questions, they will realize that they need to listen to God and obey him.

## Hebrews 3:1

### Connecting Statement:

This second warning is longer and more detailed and includes chapters 3 and 4. The writer begins by showing that Christ is better than his servant Moses.

### holy brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers, God has set you apart (UST)

Here “brothers” refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women. Alternate translation: “holy brothers and sisters” or “my holy fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### you share in a heavenly calling (ULT)

### and has chosen you to belong to himself...together (UST)

Here “heavenly” represents God. Alternate translation: “God has called us together” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the apostle and high priest of...confession (ULT)

### He is God’s apostle to us and is also the high priest (UST)

Here the word “apostle” means someone who has been sent. In this passage, it does not refer to any of the twelve apostles. Alternate translation: “the one whom God sent and is the high priest”

### of our confession (ULT)

### the...whom we say we believe in (UST)

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “confession” is expressed as the verb “confess.” Alternate translation: “whom we confess” or “in whom we believe” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [in a...calling](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [holy](#)
- [of...confession](#)
- [apostle](#)
- [high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to himself](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [and has chosen you to belong](#)
- [My fellow believers](#)
- [God has set you apart](#)
- [whom...say we believe in](#)
- [He is God’s apostle](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, [holy brothers](#), you share [in a heavenly calling](#). Think about [Jesus](#), the [apostle](#) and [high priest](#) of our [confession](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [My fellow believers](#), [God has set you apart and has chosen you to belong to himself](#). So consider [Jesus](#). [He is God’s apostle to us](#) and [is also the high priest](#) whom we [say we believe in](#) together.

- to us...is also...high priest



## Hebrews 3:2

### in God's house (ULT)

### all of God's people, whom we call God's house (UST)

The Hebrew people to whom God revealed himself are spoken of as if they were a literal house. Alternate translation: "to all of God's people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to the one who appointed
- He...faithful
- Moses
- just as...was...faithful
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- appointed
- He faithfully served God
- Moses faithfully served
- just
- all of God's people, whom we call...house

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [He](#) was [faithful to the one who appointed](#) him, [just as Moses](#) was also [faithful](#) in God's [house](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> [He faithfully served God](#), who [appointed](#) him, [just](#) like [Moses faithfully served all of God's people, whom we call](#) God's [house](#).

## Hebrews 3:3

### he...has been considered worthy (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has considered Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [has been considered worthy](#)
- [honor](#)
- [glory](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [house itself](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [honor](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For he [has been considered worthy](#) of greater [glory](#) than [Moses](#), just as the one who builds a house has much greater [honor](#) than the [house itself](#).

#### UST

<sup>3-4</sup> Now just as every house is made by someone, God made everything. So God has considered that Jesus is worthy for people to honor him more than they honor Moses, just as the one who builds a house deserves for people to honor him more than they should honor the house.

## Hebrews 3:4

### the one...who built everything (ULT)

God's acts of creating the world are spoken of as if he had built a house. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### every...house is built by someone (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "every house has someone who built it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [is God](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For every [house](#) is built by someone, but the one who built everything [is God](#).

#### UST

<sup>3-4</sup> Now just as every house is made by someone, God made everything. So God has considered that Jesus is worthy for people to honor him more than they honor Moses, just as the one who builds a house deserves for people to honor him more than they should honor the house.

## Hebrews 3:5

### in God's entire house (ULT) as he helped all of God's people (UST)

The Hebrew people to whom God revealed himself are spoken of as if they were a literal house. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:2](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### for a testimony about the things (ULT) So Moses testified about what Jesus would say in the future (UST)

This phrase probably refers to all of Moses' work. Alternate translation: "Moses' life and work pointed to the things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### that were to be spoken of in the future (ULT) what Jesus would say in the future (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus would say in the future" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- a testimony
- was faithful
- Moses
- as
- a servant
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- So Moses testified
- faithfully served God
- Moses
- just as
- a servant faithfully serves his master
- God's people

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For [Moses was faithful as a servant](#) in God's entire [house](#), for [a testimony](#) about the things that were to be spoken of in the future.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Moses](#) very [faithfully served God](#) as he helped all of [God's people, just as a servant faithfully serves his master](#). [So Moses testified](#) about what Jesus would say in the future.

## Hebrews 3:6

### a Son (ULT)

#### Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### who is in charge of God's house (ULT)

#### rules over God's people (UST)

This speaks about God's people as if they were a literal house.  
Alternate translation: "who rules over God's people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### We are his house (ULT)

#### who...And we are the people he rules (UST)

This speaks of God's people as if they are a literal house. Alternate translation: "We are God's people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### if we hold fast to our confidence and the hope of which we boast (ULT)

#### if we continue to courageously believe in the Messiah and confidently expect God to do all that he has promised to do for us (UST)

Here "courage" and "hope" are abstract and can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "if we continue to be courageous and joyfully expect God to do what he has promised" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a Son
- of which we boast
- Christ
- hope
- confidence
- as
- house
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Son
- confidently
- the Messiah
- expect
- we continue to courageously believe in
- is the
- people
- the people he rules

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But [Christ](#) is faithful [as a Son](#) who is in charge of God's [house](#). We are his [house](#) if we hold fast to our [confidence](#) and the [hope of which we boast](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> But [the Messiah is the Son](#) who rules over God's [people](#). And we are [the people he rules](#) if [we continue to courageously believe in](#) the Messiah and [confidently expect](#) God to do all that he has promised to do for us.

## Hebrews 3:7

### General Information:

This quotation comes from the Old Testament in the book of Psalms.

### Connecting Statement:

The warning here is a reminder that the Israelites' unbelief kept almost all of them from entering into the land that God had promised them.

**if you hear his voice (ULT)**  
**when you hear God speak to you (UST)**

God's "voice" represents him speaking. Alternate translation: "when you hear God speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [voice](#)
- [it is just as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [speak to you](#)
- [it is just as when](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Therefore, [it is just as](#) the [Holy Spirit](#) says: "Today, if you hear his [voice](#)

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So then, [it is just as when](#) the [Holy Spirit](#) caused the psalmist to write these words in the scriptures to the Israelites: "Now, when you hear God [speak to you](#),

## Hebrews 3:8

### do not harden your hearts (ULT)

### Do not stubbornly disobey him...your ancestors (UST)

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "harden your hearts" is a metaphor for being stubborn. Alternate translation: "do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### as in the rebellion, in the time of testing in the wilderness (ULT)

### as...rebelled against him when he tested them in the wilderness (UST)

Here "rebellion" and "testing" can be stated as verbs. Alternate translation: "as when your ancestors rebelled against God and tested him in the wilderness" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> do not [harden](#) your [hearts as](#) in the [rebellion](#), in the [time](#) of [testing](#) in the [wilderness](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Do not [stubbornly disobey him](#), [as](#) your ancestors [rebelled against him when he tested them](#) in the [wilderness](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [testing](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [rebellion](#)
- [as](#)
- [time](#)
- [harden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stubbornly disobey him](#)
- [when he tested them](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [rebelled against him](#)
- [as](#)
- [when he tested them](#)
- [stubbornly disobey him](#)

## Hebrews 3:9

### General Information:

This quotation is from the Psalms.

**your fathers (ULT)**  
**your ancestors (UST)**

Here “your” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**by testing me (ULT)**  
**tested me to see whether I would be patient with them (UST)**

Here “me” refers to God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [works](#)
- [rebelled](#)
- [testing me](#)
- [fathers](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all...amazing things...did](#)
- [repeatedly](#)
- [tested me...see whether I would be patient with them](#)
- [ancestors](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> There your [fathers rebelled](#) by [testing me](#), and they saw my [works](#)

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> There your [ancestors repeatedly tested me](#) to [see whether I would be patient with them](#), even though they saw [all](#) the [amazing things](#) I [did](#).



## Hebrews 3:10

**for forty years (ULT)**

**forty years (UST)**

“40 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

**I was displeased with (ULT)**

**I was angry (UST)**

“I was angry” or “I was greatly unhappy”

**They have always gone astray in...hearts (ULT)**

**They are never faithful to me (UST)**

Here “gone astray in their hearts” is a metaphor for not being loyal to God. Here “hearts” is a metonym for minds or desires. Alternate translation: “They have always rejected me” or “They have always refused to obey me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**they have not known my ways (ULT)**

**They do not understand how I wanted them to conduct their lives (UST)**

This speaks of a manner of conducting one’s life as if it were a way or a path. Alternate translation: “They have not understood how I want them to conduct their lives” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in...hearts](#)
- [years](#)
- [generation](#)
- [They have...gone astray](#)
- [they have...known](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They are never faithful to me](#)
- [years](#)
- [people](#)
- [They are never faithful to me](#)
- [They do...understand](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> for forty [years](#). Therefore I was displeased with that [generation](#). I said, ‘[They have](#) always [gone astray](#) in their [hearts](#), and [they have](#) not [known](#) my ways.’

### UST

<sup>10</sup> For forty [years](#) I was angry with those [people](#), and I said about them, ‘[They are never faithful to me](#). [They do](#) not [understand](#) how I wanted them to conduct their lives.’

## Hebrews 3:11

**They will never enter into my rest (ULT)**

**They will not enter the land of Canaan where I would let them rest (UST)**

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "They will never enter the place of rest" or "I will never allow them to experience my blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [anger](#)
- [It is just as](#)
- [rest](#)
- [I swore](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [was angry](#)
- [So then](#)
- [land of Canaan where...rest](#)
- [I solemnly declared](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [It is just as I swore](#) in my [anger](#): 'They will never enter into my [rest](#).'

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [So then](#) I [was angry](#) with them. [I solemnly declared](#), 'They will not enter the [land of Canaan where](#) I would let them [rest](#)!'

## Hebrews 3:12

### brothers (ULT)

### fellow believers (UST)

Here this refers to fellow Christians including males and females.  
Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" or "fellow believers"  
(See: [Metaphor](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**so that there will not be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, that turns away from the living God (ULT)  
that none of you develop evil thinking that would lead you to stop obeying the only God who actually lives (UST)**

Here "heart" is a metonym that represents a person's mind or will. Refusing to believe and obey God is spoken of as if the heart did not believe and it physically turned away from God. Alternate translation: "there will not be any of you who refuse to believe the truth and who stop obeying the living God" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### the living God (ULT)

### only God who actually lives (UST)

"the true God who is really alive"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [the...God](#)
- [an...heart](#)
- [of unbelief](#)
- [evil](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [only...actually lives](#)
- [fellow believers](#)
- [God who](#)
- [develop...thinking](#)
- [stop obeying the](#)
- [evil](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Be careful, [brothers](#), so that there will not be in any of you an [evil heart of unbelief](#), that turns away from the [living God](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So, [fellow believers](#), be careful that none of you [develop evil thinking](#) that would lead you to [stop obeying the only God who actually lives](#).

## Hebrews 3:13

**as long as it is called “today (ULT)  
while you still have the opportunity (UST)**

“while there is still opportunity,”

**no one among you will be hardened by the  
deceitfulness of sin (ULT)**

**If not...someone among you could behave stubbornly  
and lead others to sin (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the deceitfulness of sin will not harden any of you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**no one among you will be hardened by the  
deceitfulness of sin (ULT)**

**If not...someone among you could behave stubbornly and lead others to sin (UST)**

Being stubborn is spoken of as being hard or having a hard heart. The hardness is a result of being deceived by sin. This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “deceitfulness” is expressed as the verb “deceive.” Alternate translation: “no one among you will be deceived by sin and become stubborn” or “you do not sin, deceiving yourselves so that you become stubborn” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is called](#)
- [of sin](#)
- [encourage](#)
- [the deceitfulness](#)
- [day](#)
- [will be hardened by](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you still have](#)
- [to sin](#)
- [encourage](#)
- [and lead](#)
- [day](#)
- [could behave stubbornly](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Instead, [encourage](#) one another every [day](#), as long as it [is called](#) “today,” so that no one among you [will be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Instead, each of you must [encourage](#) each other every [day](#), while [you still have](#) the opportunity. If not someone among you [could behave stubbornly and lead](#) others [to sin](#).

## Hebrews 3:14

### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the same psalm that was also quoted in [Hebrews 3:7](#).

**For...we have become (ULT)**

**We are now joined to...from...time (UST)**

Here “we” refers to both the writer and the readers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**if...our confidence...we firmly hold to (ULT)**

**if we...confidently trust in him...the...seriously and...**

**we...trusted in him to (UST)**

“if we continue to confidently trust in him”

**from the beginning (ULT)**

**the...first (UST)**

“from when we first begin to believe in him”

**to the end (ULT)**

**continue to...time when we die (UST)**

This is a polite way of referring to when a person dies. Alternate translation: “until we die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Christ](#)
- [confidence](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [confidently trust in him](#)

### ULT

**14** For we have become partners [of Christ](#) if we firmly hold to our [confidence](#) from the beginning to the end.

### UST

**14** We are now joined to the [Messiah](#) if we continue to seriously and [confidently trust in him](#), from the time we first trusted in him to the time when we die.

## Hebrews 3:15

**it has been said (ULT)**  
**psalmist wrote...scripture that (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the writer wrote" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**if you hear his voice (ULT)**  
**the...God said...when you hear me speaking to you (UST)**

God's "voice" represents him speaking. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:7](#). Alternate translation: "when you hear God speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**as in the rebellion (ULT)**  
**did that when they rebelled against me (UST)**

Here "rebellion" can be stated as a verb. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:8](#). Alternate translation: "as when your ancestors rebelled against God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [voice](#)
- [rebellion](#)
- [as](#)
- [do...harden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [do...stubbornly disobey me](#)
- [said...me speaking to you](#)
- [they rebelled against me](#)
- [did that](#)
- [do...stubbornly disobey me](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> About this it has been said, "Today, if you hear his [voice](#), do not [harden](#) your [hearts](#), [as](#) in the [rebellion](#)."

### UST

<sup>15</sup> The psalmist wrote in the scripture that God [said](#), "Now, when you hear [me speaking to you](#), do not [stubbornly disobey me](#). Your ancestors [did that](#) when [they rebelled against me](#)."

## Hebrews 3:16

### General Information:

The word “they” refers to the disobedient Israelites, and “we” refers to the author and readers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**For who heard and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt through Moses (ULT)**

**For remember who it was who rebelled against God, even though they heard him speak to them. It was certainly all of God’s people who Moses led out of Egypt (UST)**

The author uses questions to teach his readers. These two questions can be joined as one statement, if needed. Alternate translation: “All those who came out of Egypt with Moses heard God, yet they still rebelled.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [and rebelled](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [rebelled against God](#)

#### ULT

**16** For who heard [and rebelled](#)? Was it not all those who came out of [Egypt](#) through [Moses](#)?

#### UST

**16** For remember who it was who [rebelled against God](#), even though they heard him speak to them. It was certainly all of God’s people who [Moses](#) led out of [Egypt](#).

## Hebrews 3:17

**And with whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose dead bodies fell in the wilderness (ULT)**

**And remember who it was with whom God was disgusted for forty years. Certainly it was God's people who sinned, and their dead bodies lay there in the desert (UST)**

The author uses questions to teach his readers. These two questions can be joined as one statement, if needed. Alternate translation: "For forty years, God was angry with those who sinned, and he let them die in the wilderness." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**for forty years (ULT)**

**for forty years (UST)**

"40 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [with those who sinned](#)
- [dead bodies](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [years](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sinned](#)
- [and their dead bodies](#)
- [desert](#)
- [years](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> And with whom was he angry for forty [years](#)? Was it not [with those who sinned](#), whose [dead bodies](#) fell in the [wilderness](#)?

### UST

<sup>17</sup> And remember who it was with whom God was disgusted for forty [years](#). Certainly it was God's people who [sinned, and their dead bodies](#) lay there in the [desert](#).



## Hebrews 3:18

**And to whom did he swear that they would not enter into his rest, if not to those who disobeyed (ULT)  
And remember about whom God solemnly declared, "They will not enter the land where I would let them rest." It was certainly those Israelites who disobeyed God (UST)**

The author uses this question to teach his readers. Alternate translation: "And it was to those who disobeyed that he swore they would not enter his rest." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**they would not enter into his rest (ULT)  
about...They will not enter the land where I would let them rest...God (UST)**

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "they would not enter the place of rest" or "they would not experience his blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to those who disobeyed](#)
- [rest](#)
- [did he swear that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who disobeyed](#)
- [land where I would let them rest](#)
- [God solemnly declared](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> And to whom [did he swear that](#) they would not enter into his [rest](#), if not [to those who disobeyed](#)?

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> And remember about whom [God solemnly declared](#), "They will not enter the [land where I would let them rest](#)." It was certainly those Israelites [who disobeyed](#) God.

## Hebrews 3:19

### because of unbelief (ULT)

### it was because they did not trust in God. So (UST)

The abstract noun “unbelief” can be translated with a verbal phrase.  
Alternate translation: “because they did not believe him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [unbelief](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [it was because they did not trust in God](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> We see that they were not able to enter because of [unbelief](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> From that example we know that [it was because they did not trust in God](#). So they were unable to enter the land where God would allow them to rest.

## **Hebrews 4**

### **Hebrews 4 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter tells why Jesus is the greatest high priest.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 4:3-4, 7, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **God's rest**

The word “rest” seems to refer to at least two things in this chapter. It refers to a place or time when God will allow his people to rest from their work (Hebrews 4:3), and it refers to God resting on the seventh day (Hebrews 4:4).

## Hebrews 4:1

### Connecting Statement:

Chapter 4 continues the warning to believers starting in [Hebrews 3:7](#). God, through the writer, gives believers a rest of which God's rest in the creation of the world is a picture.

### Therefore (ULT) then (UST)

"Because what I have just said is true" or "Since God will certainly punish those who do not obey"

**while there still remains the promise of entering into his rest, any of you might seem to have failed to reach it (ULT)**

**God's promise that we may enter his place of rest still exists...lest some among you seem to fail to enter his place of rest (UST)**

God's promise is spoken of as if it were a gift that God left behind when he visited the people. Alternate translation: "none of you fail to enter into God's rest, which he promised to us" or "God will allow you all to enter into his rest as he promised us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of entering into his rest (ULT)  
that we may enter his place of rest (UST)**

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "to enter the place of rest" or "to experience God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [let us be afraid that](#)
- [the promise](#)
- [rest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [We are afraid](#)
- [God's promise](#)
- [place of rest](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, [let us be afraid that](#) while there still remains [the promise](#) of entering into his [rest](#), any of you might seem to have failed to reach it.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [God's promise](#) that we may enter his [place of rest](#) still exists. [We are afraid](#) then lest some among you seem to fail to enter his place of rest.

## Hebrews 4:2

**For...we were told the good news just as they were (ULT)**

**Indeed...we have heard the good news about...just as they did (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For we heard the good news just as they did" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**just as they were (ULT)**

**just as they did (UST)**

Here "they" refers to the Hebrews' ancestors who were alive during the time of Moses.

**But the message that they heard did not benefit them, for they were not united with those who heard it in faith (ULT)**

**God's promises...But that message did not benefit them because they did not go along with those who believed God, listened and obeyed (UST)**

"But that message did not benefit those who did not join with the people who believed and obeyed." The author is talking about two groups of people, those who received God's covenant with faith, and those who heard it but did not believe. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "But that message benefited only those who believed and obeyed it" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [in faith](#)
- [told the good news](#)
- [benefit them](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believed God](#)
- [we have heard the good news about](#)
- [did...benefit them](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For we were [told the good news](#) just as they were. But the message that they heard did not [benefit them](#), for they were not united with those who heard it [in faith](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Indeed, [we have heard the good news about](#) God's promises, just as they did. But that message did not [benefit them](#) because they did not go along with those who [believed God](#), listened and obeyed.

## Hebrews 4:3

### General Information:

Here the first quotation, "As I swore...rest," is from a psalm. The second quotation, "God rested on...deeds," is from Moses' writings. The third quotation, "They will never enter...rest," is again from the same psalm.

#### who have believed (ULT)

#### as do those who have believed (UST)

"we who believe"

#### we...enter...who have believed...that rest (ULT)

#### Oh yes, we do enter...Oh yes, we do enter...that rest, as do those who have believed...of (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "we who have believed will enter the place of rest" or "we who have believed will experience God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### just as he said (ULT)

#### But those who do not believe do not enter, as he has said...land where...would let them (UST)

"just as God said"

#### As I swore in my wrath (ULT)

#### Because I was angry with the people...Israel, I solemnly declared (UST)

"As I swore when I was very angry"

#### They will never enter into my rest (ULT)

#### They will not enter the...I...rest (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. Alternate translation: "They will never enter the place of rest" or "They will never experience my blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### his works...were finished (ULT)

#### his plans for a place of resting...the...had been finished (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he finished creating" or "he finished his works of creation" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### from the foundation of the world (ULT)

#### from...time he created the world (UST)

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "at the beginning of the world" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For we [who have believed](#) enter [that rest](#), [just as](#) he said, "[As I swore](#) in my [wrath](#), They will never enter into my [rest](#)." Even so, his [works](#) were finished from [the foundation of the world](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Oh yes, we do enter [that rest](#), as do those who [have believed](#). [But those who do not believe do not enter](#), as he has said, "[Because](#) I [was angry](#) with the people [of](#) Israel, [I solemnly declared](#), 'They will not enter the [land where](#) I [would let them rest](#).'" God said this even though [his plans for a place of resting](#) had been finished from the time [he created the world](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- works
- the world
- who have believed
- wrath
- the foundation of
- just as
- As
- that rest
- rest
- the foundation of the world
- I swore

### Translation Words - UST

- his plans for a place of resting
- the world
- have believed
- was angry
- he created
- But those who do not believe do not enter...land where...would let them
- Because
- that rest...of
- rest
- he created the world
- I solemnly declared

## Hebrews 4:4

**the seventh day (ULT)**

**the seventh day (UST)**

This is the ordinal number for "seven." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [works](#)
- [rested](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [work of creating](#)
- [Then...rested](#)
- [day](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For he has somewhere spoken thus about the seventh day: "And [God rested](#) on the seventh [day](#) from all his [works](#)."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> What the scriptures say about the seventh day shows that this is true. God spent six days creating the world and then rested. "Then, on the seventh [day](#), [God rested](#) from his [work of creating](#) everything."



## Hebrews 4:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [rest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [land where...would let them rest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And again in this same passage, "They will never enter into my [rest](#)."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> But note again what God said about the Israelites in the passage that I quoted previously: "They will not enter the [land where](#) I [would let them rest](#)."

## Hebrews 4:6

### it still remains that some will enter into it (ULT) some people still enter God's rest (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that he can give, and as if they were a place to which people could go. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God still allows some people to enter his place of rest" or "God still allows some people to experience his blessings of rest" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [had the good news proclaimed to them](#)
- [their disobedience](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God promise that they would rest](#)
- [they refused to believe God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Therefore, because it still remains that some will enter into it, and those who previously [had the good news proclaimed to them](#) did not go in, because of [their disobedience](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So then, it is clear that some people still enter God's rest. But the Israelites who first heard [God promise that they would rest](#)—they did not enter that place of resting, because [they refused to believe God](#).

## Hebrews 4:7

### General Information:

Here we find out that this quotation from the Psalms was written by David ([Hebrews 3:7-8](#)).

**if you hear his voice (ULT)**  
**the Israelites rebelled against God...the desert, he...you understand what God is saying to (UST)**

God's commands to Israel are spoken of as if he had given them in an audible voice. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:7](#).

Alternate translation: "if you hear God speaking" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**do not harden your hearts (ULT)**  
**you, do not stubbornly disobey him (UST)**

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "harden your hearts" is a metaphor for being stubborn. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 3:8](#). Alternate translation: "do not be stubborn" or "do not refuse to listen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hearts](#)
- [God has...set](#)
- [David](#)
- [days](#)
- [voice](#)
- [as](#)
- [a...day](#)
- [harden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [do...stubbornly disobey him](#)
- [set...in](#)
- [King David](#)
- [time](#)
- [what God is saying to](#)
- [We know that is true because](#)
- [time when we may enter that place of resting](#)
- [do...stubbornly disobey him](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [God has](#) again [set](#) a certain [day](#) calling it "Today." After many [days](#), he spoke through [David](#), [as](#) it was earlier said, "Today if you hear his [voice](#), do not [harden](#) your [hearts](#)."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But God [set](#) another [time when we may enter that place of resting](#). That [time](#) is now! [We know that is true because](#) much later than when the Israelites rebelled against God [in](#) the desert, he caused [King David](#) to write what I have already quoted, "Right now, when you understand [what God is saying to](#) you, do not [stubbornly disobey him](#)."

## Hebrews 4:8

### Connecting Statement:

Here the writer warns believers not to disobey but to enter into the rest God offers. He reminds them that God's word will convict them and that they can come in prayer with the confidence that God will help them.

**if...Joshua had given them rest (ULT)**

**If...Joshua had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give them (UST)**

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were rest that Joshua could give. Alternate translation: "if Joshua had brought the Israelites to the place where God would give them rest" or "if the Israelites during the time of Joshua had experienced God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Joshua](#)
- [had given...rest](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Joshua](#)
- [had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give](#)
- [day of rest. But he did give them another promise of rest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For if [Joshua had given](#) them [rest](#), God would not have spoken about another [day](#) after this.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> If [Joshua had led the Israelites to enter the only place of resting God would give](#) them, then much later God would not have spoken again about another [day of rest. But he did give them another promise of rest.](#)

## Hebrews 4:9

**there is still a Sabbath rest reserved for God's people (ULT)**

**there remains a time when God's people will rest eternally (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there is still a Sabbath rest that God has reserved for his people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a Sabbath rest (ULT)**

**a time when...will rest eternally (UST)**

Eternal peace and security are spoken of as if they were the Sabbath day, the Jewish day of worship and rest from working. Alternate translation: "an eternal rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- for...God's...people
- God's
- a Sabbath rest
- for...people

### Translation Words - UST

- God's...people
- God's
- a time when...will rest eternally
- people

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Therefore there is still [a Sabbath rest](#) reserved for [God's people](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> So, just as God rested on the seventh day after he finished creating everything, there remains [a time when God's people will rest eternally](#).

## Hebrews 4:10

### he...who enters into God's rest (ULT)

### Whoever...enters God's place of resting (UST)

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they are a place to enter. Alternate translation: "the person who enters into God's place of rest" or "the person who experiences God's blessings of rest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [just as...did](#)
- [rest](#)
- [has...rested](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [work](#)
- [just as](#)
- [place of resting](#)
- [has...ceased](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For he who enters into God's [rest](#) has himself also [rested](#) from his [deeds](#), [just as God did](#) from his.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Whoever enters God's [place of resting](#) has also [ceased](#) from his [work](#), [just as God](#) finished doing his own work of creating everything.

## Hebrews 4:11

**let us be eager...to enter into that rest (ULT)**  
**we eagerly...enter into that rest of God (UST)**

The peace and security provided by God are spoken of as if they were a place to enter. Alternate translation: “we should also do everything we can to rest with God where he is” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will fall into the kind of disobedience that they did**

Disobedience is spoken of as if it were a hole that a person could physically fall into by accident. This passage can be reworded so that the abstract noun “disobedience” is expressed as the verb “disobey.” Alternate translation: “will disobey in the same way as they did” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of disobedience](#)
- [rest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who fails to believe](#)
- [rest of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Therefore let us be eager to enter into that [rest](#), so that no one might fall into the same kind [of disobedience](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> So we eagerly enter into that [rest of God](#), in order that there be no one among us [who fails to believe](#) as the others failed to believe.

## Hebrews 4:12

**is living...the word of God (ULT)**  
**are alive...God's words (UST)**

Here “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to humanity, whether through speech or through written messages. Alternate translation: “the words of God are living”

**is living...and active (ULT)**  
**are alive...and powerful (UST)**

This speaks about God's word as if it were alive. It means when God speaks, it is powerful and effective. (See: [Personification](#))

**sharper than any two-edged sword (ULT)**  
**they are able to cut sharper than any two-edged sword (UST)**

A two-edged sword can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**two-edged sword (ULT)**  
**two-edged sword (UST)**

a sword with a blade that is sharp on both edges

**It pierces even to the dividing of soul and spirit, of joints and marrow (ULT)**

This continues speaking about God's word as if it were a sword. Here the sword is so sharp that it can cut through and divide parts of the human that are very difficult or even impossible to divide. This means that there is nothing inside us that we can hide from God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**and...of soul...spirit (ULT)**  
**and...our soul...our spirit (UST)**

These are two different but closely related nonphysical parts of a human. The “soul” is what causes a person to be alive. The “spirit” is the part of a person that causes him to be able to know and believe in God.

**and...of joints and marrow (ULT)**  
**and...God's words cut deeply, down through the joints into the marrow within the bones (UST)**

The “joint” is what holds two bones together. The “marrow” is the center part of the bone.

**is able to discern (ULT)**  
**a judge, deciding (UST)**

This speaks about God's word as if it were a person who could know something. Alternate translation: “exposes” (See: [Personification](#))

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For the [word of God is living](#) and active and sharper than any two-edged [sword](#). It pierces even to the dividing [of soul](#) and [spirit](#), of joints and marrow, and [is able to discern](#) the thoughts and intentions [of the heart](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> [God's words are alive](#) and powerful, and they are able to cut sharper than any two-edged [sword](#)—cutting so deep that it can separate out the difference between [our soul](#) and [our spirit](#). God's words cut deeply, down through the joints into the marrow within the bones. God's words are like [a judge, deciding](#) what thoughts are good or what thoughts are bad, and his words show the motives hidden deep within each of our [hearts](#).



**the thoughts and intentions of the heart (ULT)**

**what thoughts are good or what thoughts are bad...his words show the motives hidden deep within each of our hearts (UST)**

"Heart" here is a metonym for "inner self." Alternate translation: "what a person is thinking and intends to do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- is living
- of God
- of the heart
- word of God
- spirit
- of soul
- is able to discern
- sword

**Translation Words - UST**

- are alive
- God's
- hearts
- God's...words
- our spirit
- our soul
- a judge, deciding
- sword

## Hebrews 4:13

**Nothing...created is hidden before God (ULT)**

**Nothing is hidden from him...him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Nothing that God has created can hide from him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**everything...is bare and open (ULT)**

**Everything...we do...God knows everything about everyone...is completely open to...and (UST)**

This speaks about all things as if they were a person standing bare, or a box that is open. Alternate translation: "everything is completely exposed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**is bare and open (ULT)**

**God knows everything about everyone...is completely open to...and (UST)**

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that nothing is hidden from God. (See: [Doublet](#))

**to the eyes of the one to whom we must give account (ULT)**

**he sees everything...We must all appear before God...we must tell him how we have lived our lives (UST)**

God is spoken of as if he had eyes. Alternate translation: "to God, who will judge how we have lived" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [created](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Nothing is](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Nothing [created](#) is hidden before God. Instead, everything is bare and open to the eyes of the one to whom we must give account.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> God knows everything about everyone. [Nothing is](#) hidden from him. Everything is completely open to him and he sees everything we do. We must all appear before God and we must tell him how we have lived our lives.

## Hebrews 4:14

**who has passed through the heavens (ULT)**  
**who ascended through the heavens (UST)**

“who has entered where God is”

**the Son of God (ULT)**  
**God’s Son (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**let us firmly hold to our beliefs (ULT)**  
**So let us courageously say openly that we trust Jesus the Messiah (UST)**

Belief and trust are spoken of as if they were objects that a person could grasp firmly. Alternate translation: “let us continue to believe confidently in him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [beliefs](#)
- [a...high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heavens](#)
- [He is Jesus](#)
- [God’s](#)
- [God’s...Son](#)
- [that we trust Jesus...Messiah](#)
- [high priest](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Therefore, since we have a great [high priest](#) who has passed through the [heavens](#), [Jesus](#) the [Son of God](#), let us firmly hold to our [beliefs](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> So we have a great [high priest](#) who ascended through the [heavens](#). [He is Jesus, God’s Son](#). So let us courageously say openly [that we trust Jesus](#) the [Messiah](#).

## Hebrews 4:15

**not...we do...have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy...but (ULT)**  
**high priest...indeed...high priest...can...indeed...have mercy...and encourage us...but (UST)**

This double negative means that, in fact, Jesus does feel sympathy with people. Alternate translation: “we have a high priest who can feel sympathy...Indeed, we have” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**who has in all ways been tempted as we are**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who has endured temptation in every way that we have” or “whom the devil has tempted in every way that he tempts us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**yet without sin (ULT)**  
**he did not sin (UST)**

“he did not sin”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [one who has...been tempted](#)
- [a high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he did...sin](#)
- [because Satan also tempted him to sin](#)
- [high priest...indeed](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For we do not have [a high priest](#) who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses, but [one who has](#) in all ways [been tempted](#) as we are, yet without [sin](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Our [high priest](#) can [indeed](#) have mercy on us and encourage us, we who tend to sin easily, [because Satan also tempted him to sin](#) in every way that he tempts us to sin—but [he did](#) not [sin](#).

## Hebrews 4:16

**to the throne of grace (ULT)**  
**to the Messiah, who rules from heaven...does for us**  
**what we do not deserve (UST)**

"to God's throne, where there is grace." Here "throne" refers to God ruling as king. Alternate translation: "to where our gracious God is sitting on his throne" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**we may receive mercy and find grace to help in time of need (ULT)**  
**and...he might kindly help us and have mercy on us**  
**when we need him to do so (UST)**

Here "mercy" and "grace" are spoken of as if they were objects that can be given or can be found. Alternate translation: "God may be merciful and gracious and help us in time of need" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of grace](#)
- [grace](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [we may receive](#)
- [confidence](#)
- [in time of need](#)
- [throne](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [does for us what we do not deserve](#)
- [he might kindly](#)
- [and have mercy on us](#)
- [and have mercy on us](#)
- [boldly](#)
- [when](#)
- [Messiah...rules from heaven](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Let us then go with [confidence](#) to the [throne of grace](#), so that [we may receive mercy](#) and find [grace](#) to help [in time of need](#).

4:2 <sup>[1]</sup> Other versions read, *But that message did not benefit those who heard it without joining faith to it*.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> So let us come [boldly](#) to the [Messiah](#), who [rules from heaven](#) and [does for us what we do not deserve](#), so that [he might kindly](#) help us [and have mercy on us when](#) we need him to do so.

## **Hebrews 5**

### **Hebrews 5 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is a continuation of the teaching of the previous chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 5:5-6.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **High priest**

Only a high priest could offer sacrifices so that God could forgive sins, so Jesus had to be a high priest. The law of Moses commanded that the high priest be from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the tribe of Judah. God made him a priest like the priest Melchizedek, who lived at the time of Abraham, before there was a tribe of Levi.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Milk and solid food**

The writer speaks of Christians who are only able to understand simple things about Jesus as if they were babies, who drink only milk and cannot eat solid food. (See: [Metaphor](#))

## Hebrews 5:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer describes the sinfulness of the Old Testament priests, then he shows that Christ has a better kind of priesthood, not based on Aaron's priesthood but on the priesthood of Melchizedek.

### **chosen from among people (ULT)** **God chooses...from the people (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God chooses from among the people" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **is appointed to act (ULT)** **he selects (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God appoints" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **people, is appointed to act on the behalf of (ULT)** **he selects...the people...for (UST)**

"to represent the people"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts](#)
- [sins](#)
- [God](#)
- [is appointed to act](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [sacrifices](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people...gifts](#)
- [the people's sins](#)
- [God](#)
- [he selects](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [sacrifice animals to him](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For every [high priest](#), chosen from among people, [is appointed to act](#) on the behalf of people in the things concerning [God](#), so that he may offer [gifts](#) and [sacrifices](#) for [sins](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> In the case of every [high priest](#) God chooses, [he selects](#) a man from the people. This man must serve [God](#) for the [people](#); he must give God [gifts](#) and [sacrifice animals to him](#) for [the people's sins](#).

## Hebrews 5:2

**those...who have been deceived (ULT)**

**those who...with those who sin against him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those... whom others have deceived” or “those...who believe what is false” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**who have been deceived (ULT)**

**with those who sin against him (UST)**

“who believe false things and so behave badly”

**is subject to weakness (ULT)**

**is weak with sin (UST)**

The high priest's own weakness is spoken of as if it were a another person who rules over him. Alternate translation: “is spiritually weak” or “is weak against sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**weakness (ULT)**

**is weak with sin (UST)**

the desire to sin

### Translation Words - ULT

- [who have been deceived](#)
- [who are ignorant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [with those who sin against him](#)
- [know little about God](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He can deal gently with those [who are ignorant](#) and [who have been deceived](#), because he also is subject to weakness.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> A high priest can be gentle with those who [know little about God](#) and [with those who sin against him](#). This is because the high priest himself is weak with sin.



## Hebrews 5:3

**he is obligated (ULT)**  
**must (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God also requires him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [people](#)
- [just as he does](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he sins](#)
- [people do](#)
- [because](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Because of this, he is obligated to offer sacrifices for [sins](#), [just as he does](#) for the [people](#), so also for himself.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> As a result, he also must sacrifice animals for himself, [because he sins](#) just like the [people do](#).

## Hebrews 5:4

### General Information:

This quotation is from the Psalms in the Old Testament.

**takes this honor (ULT)**  
**no one can...honor...himself...deciding to become...**  
**the...high priest (UST)**

Honor is spoken of as if it were an object that a person could grasp in his hands. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**takes this honor (ULT)**  
**no one can...honor...himself...deciding to become...**  
**the...high priest (UST)**

The “honor” or praise and respect that people gave to the high priest stand for his task. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**he is called by God, just as also Aaron was (ULT)**  
**by...God chose each man to become a high priest, as he chose Aaron to be the first high priest (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God called him, just as he called Aaron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he is called](#)
- [God](#)
- [honor](#)
- [Aaron was](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [chose each man to become a high priest](#)
- [God](#)
- [honor](#)
- [Aaron to be...first high priest](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> It is not for himself that anyone takes this [honor](#). Instead, [he is called](#) by [God](#), just as also [Aaron was](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But no one can [honor](#) himself by deciding to become the high priest. Instead, [God chose each man to become a high priest](#), as he chose [Aaron to be](#) the [first high priest](#).

## Hebrews 5:5

**Christ...the one speaking...to him...said (ULT)  
the...by saying to him what the psalmist wrote in the  
scriptures (UST)**

"God said to him"

**You are my Son; today I have become your Father (ULT)  
appointed him...You are my son! Today I have declared  
that I am your father (UST)**

These two phrases mean essentially the same thing. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 1:5](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

**Son (ULT)  
son (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God the Father. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [honor](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Christ](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [honor](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Messiah](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> In the same way also, [Christ](#) did not [honor](#) himself by making himself [high priest](#). Instead, the one speaking to him said, "You are my [Son](#); today I have become your Father."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Similarly, the [Messiah](#) also did not [honor](#) himself by becoming [high priest](#). Instead, God the Father appointed him by saying to him what the psalmist wrote in the scriptures: "You are my [son](#)! Today I have declared that I am your father!"

## Hebrews 5:6

### General Information:

This prophecy is from a Psalm of David.

**also...he...says (ULT)**

**also...he...said to the Messiah when the psalmist wrote...scripture passage (UST)**

To whom God is speaking can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "he also says to Christ" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**in another place (ULT)**

**in another (UST)**

"in another place in the scriptures"

**after the order of Melchizedek (ULT)**

**in the way that Melchizedek was a priest (UST)**

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a priest](#)
- [of Melchizedek](#)
- [It is just as](#)
- [forever](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are a priest](#)
- [Melchizedek was a priest](#)
- [It is just as](#)
- [eternally](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> [It is just as](#) he also says in another place, "You are [a priest forever](#) after the order [of Melchizedek](#)."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> [It is just as](#) he also said to the Messiah when the psalmist wrote in another scripture passage: "You [are a priest eternally](#) in the way that [Melchizedek was a priest](#)."

## Hebrews 5:7

### During the days of his flesh (ULT)

### In...the days when the Messiah was living here in the world, he (UST)

Here "the days" stands for a period of time. And, "flesh" stand for Jesus's earthly life. Alternate translation: "While he lived on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### prayers...and requests (ULT)

### prayed to God...and...He asked God (UST)

Both of these words mean basically the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

### the one who was able to save him from death (ULT)

### him...who could save him from dying (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) God was able to save Christ so that he would not die. Alternate translation: 'to save him from dying' or 2)

God was able to save Christ after Christ's death by making him alive again. If possible, translate this in a way that allows both interpretations.

### he was heard (ULT)

### God listened to him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God heard him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- of...flesh
- the one who was able
- prayers
- death
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- save
- Messiah was living here in the world
- could
- prayed to God
- dying
- days when

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> During the [days](#) of his [flesh](#), Christ offered up both [prayers](#) and requests with loud cries and tears to [the one who was able to save](#) him from [death](#), and he was heard because of his godly life.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> In the [days when](#) the [Messiah was living here in the world](#), he [prayed to God](#) and cried out loudly to him in tears. He asked God, who [could save](#) him from [dying](#). He prayed and God listened to him, because the Messiah honored him and obeyed him.

## Hebrews 5:8

### a son (ULT)

### God's own son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- obedience
- he suffered

### Translation Words - UST

- God's own son
- to obey God
- he suffered

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Even though he was [a son](#), he learned [obedience](#) from what [he suffered](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Although the Messiah is [God's own son](#), he learned [to obey God](#) by what [he suffered](#)

## Hebrews 5:9

### Connecting Statement:

In verse 11 the writer begins his third warning. He warns these believers that they are still not mature and encourages them to learn God's word so they can understand right from wrong.

### He was made perfect (ULT)

#### By accomplishing (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made him perfect" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### He was made perfect (ULT)

#### By accomplishing (UST)

Here this means being made mature, able to honor God in all aspects of life.

**and became, for everyone who obeys him, the source of eternal salvation (ULT)**  
**everything that God wanted him to do, he has now become fully able to save eternally all who obey him (UST)**

The abstract noun "salvation" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "now he saves all who obey him and causes them to live forever" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of...salvation](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [the source](#)
- [obeys](#)
- [He was made perfect](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to save](#)
- [eternally](#)
- [fully able](#)
- [obey](#)
- [By accomplishing](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [He was made perfect](#) and became, for everyone who [obeys](#) him, [the source](#) of [eternal salvation](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [By accomplishing](#) everything that God wanted him to do, he has now become [fully able to save eternally](#) all who [obey](#) him.

## Hebrews 5:10

### He was designated by God (ULT) God has designated him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God designated him” or “God appointed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT) in the way that Melchizedek was a high priest (UST)

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: “to be the sort of high priest that Melchizedek was”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- as high priest
- of Melchizedek

#### Translation Words - UST

- God has designated him
- to be our high priest
- Melchizedek was a high priest

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> He was designated by [God as high priest](#) according to the order [of Melchizedek](#).

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> [God has designated him to be our high priest](#) in the way that [Melchizedek was a high priest](#).



## Hebrews 5:11

### **We have much to say (ULT)**

#### **I want to tell you much...the (UST)**

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun “we,” he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: “I have much to say” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### **you have become dull in hearing (ULT)**

#### **the...you find it so difficult to understand (UST)**

The ability to understand and obey is spoken of as if it were the ability to listen. And the ability to listen is spoken of as if it were a metal tool that becomes dull with use. Alternate translation: “you have trouble understanding it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **ULT**

<sup>11</sup> We have much to say about this, but it is hard to explain since you have become dull in hearing.

### **UST**

<sup>11</sup> I want to tell you much about the many ways in which the Messiah resembles Melchizedek. This is hard for me to explain to you because you find it so difficult to understand.

## Hebrews 5:12

### basic principles (ULT) elementary truths...the...starting from...beginning (UST)

Here "principles" means a guideline or standard for making decisions. Alternate translation: "basic truths"

### You have become...in need of milk (ULT) You need those basic truths like...babies need...milk (UST)

Teaching about God that is easy to understand is spoken of as if it were milk, the only food that infants can take. Alternate translation: "You have become like babies and can drink only milk" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of milk, not solid food (ULT) like...milk. You are not ready to learn more difficult things, things that are like...solid food that mature people need (UST)

Teaching about God that is difficult to understand is spoken of as if it were solid food, suitable for adults. Alternate translation: "milk instead of solid food that adults can eat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God's](#)
- [for someone to teach](#)
- [time](#)
- [teachers](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [now](#)
- [teaching God's truths to others](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For even though by this [time](#) you ought to be [teachers](#), you again have need [for someone to teach](#) you what are the basic principles of [God's](#) messages. You have become in need of milk, not solid food!

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> You became the Messiahians long ago. So by [now](#) you should be [teaching God's truths to others](#). But you still need someone [to teach](#) you again the elementary truths of the words of [God](#) from the scriptures, starting from the beginning. You need those basic truths like babies need milk. You are not ready to learn more difficult things, things that are like the solid food that mature people need.

## Hebrews 5:13

### only takes milk (ULT)

### still learning these basic truths...need milk (UST)

Here “takes” stands for “drinks.” Alternate translation: “drinks milk” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### because he is still a little child (ULT)

### For they are just like babies who (UST)

Spiritual maturity is compared with the kind of food that a growing child eats. Solid food is not for a tiny baby, and that is a figure describing a young Christian who only learns simple truths; but later, more solid food is given to the little child, just as when a person matures he can learn about matters that are more difficult. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of righteousness](#)
- [a little child](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [becoming righteous](#)
- [just like babies who](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For anyone who only takes milk is inexperienced with the message [of righteousness](#), because he is still [a little child](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Remember that those who are still learning these basic truths do not understand what God says about [becoming righteous](#). For they are [just like babies who](#) need milk!

## Hebrews 5:14

**who by practice have trained their senses to distinguish both good and evil (ULT)  
the more difficult spiritual truth...is for people who are adults. They can tell the difference between what is good and what is evil, because they have trained themselves by learning what is right and what is wrong (UST)**

People trained to understand something are spoken of as if their ability to understand had been trained. Alternate translation: “who are mature and can distinguish between good and evil” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [evil](#)
- [distinguish](#)
- [for adults](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what is right](#)
- [what is wrong](#)
- [learning](#)
- [for people who know God better](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> But solid food is [for adults](#), who by practice have trained their senses to [distinguish](#) both [good](#) and [evil](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> But the more difficult spiritual truth is [for people who know God better](#), just like solid food is for people who are adults. They can tell the difference between what is good and what is evil, because they have trained themselves by [learning what is right](#) and [what is wrong](#).

## Hebrews 6

### Hebrews 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Abrahamic Covenant

In the covenant that God made with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect Abraham's descendants and to give them land of their own. (See: [covenant](#))

## Hebrews 6:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer continues with what immature Hebrew believers need to do to become mature Christians. He reminds them of the foundational teachings.

### let us leave the beginning of the message of Christ and move forward to maturity (ULT)

This speaks about the basic teachings as if they were the beginning of a journey and the mature teachings as if they were the end of a journey. Alternate translation: "let us stop only discussing what we first learned and start understanding more mature teachings as well" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Let us not lay again the foundation...of faith in God (ULT)

Basic teachings are spoken of as if they were a building whose construction begins by laying a foundation. Alternate translation: "Let us not repeat the basic teachings...of faith in God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### dead works (ULT)

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [works](#)
- [of repentance](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [of Christ](#)
- [dead](#)
- [maturity](#)
- [Let us...lay](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [work, works, deeds](#)
- [repent, repentance](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [perfect, perfected, perfection, complete](#)
- [found, founder, foundation](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So then, let us leave the beginning of the message [of Christ](#) and move forward to [maturity](#). [Let us](#) not [lay](#) again the foundation [of repentance](#) from [dead works](#) and [of faith](#) in [God](#),

### UST

<sup>1-3</sup> So, we must not keep discussing what we first learned about the Messiah, things that all believers must learn at first. Some of these things are how to stop doing sinful deeds, those that lead to death, and how to start trusting in God. There are also important things we teach: various kinds of baptism, why we often pray while putting our hands on each other; and also about how God will raise us all from the dead and judge everyone in a way that will last forever. Indeed, we will discuss these things again later, if God gives us the chance to do it. But now we must discuss things that are harder to understand; these are things that will help us to trust in the Messiah in all times, no matter what happens.

## Hebrews 6:2

### teaching about...eternal judgment (ULT)

Basic teachings are spoken of as if they were a building whose construction begins by laying a foundation. Alternate translation: "nor the basic teachings...eternal judgment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### laying on...hands (ULT)

This practice was done to set someone apart for special service or position.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eternal](#)
- [of...the resurrection](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [hands](#)
- [teaching about](#)
- [of the dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [resurrection](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [hand](#)
- [teach, teaching, untaught](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [teaching about](#) baptisms, laying on of [hands](#), [the resurrection of the dead](#), and [eternal judgment](#).

#### UST

## Hebrews 6:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> We will also do this if [God](#) permits.

### UST

<sup>1-3</sup> So, we must not keep discussing what we first learned about the Messiah, things that all believers must learn at first. Some of these things are how to stop doing sinful deeds, those that lead to death, and how to start trusting in God. There are also important things we teach: various kinds of baptism, why we often pray while putting our hands on each other; and also about how God will raise us all from the dead and judge everyone in a way that will last forever. Indeed, we will discuss these things again later, if God gives us the chance to do it. But now we must discuss things that are harder to understand; these are things that will help us to trust in the Messiah in all times, no matter what happens.



## Hebrews 6:4

### for those who were once enlightened (ULT) they once had God's light (UST)

Understanding is spoken of as if it were illumination. Alternate translation: "those who once understood the message about Christ" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### who...tasted...the heavenly gift (ULT) and had experienced...the...good things given by God (UST)

Experiencing salvation is spoken of as if it were tasting food. Alternate translation: "who experienced God's saving power" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### who were sharers of the Holy Spirit (ULT) shared in the Holy Spirit (UST)

The Holy Spirit, who comes to believers, is spoken of as if he were an object that people could share. Alternate translation: "who received the Holy Spirit" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [gift](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [of the Holy Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [by God](#)
- [good things given](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, who both tasted the [heavenly gift](#), and who were sharers [of the Holy Spirit](#),

### UST

<sup>4</sup> For it is impossible to persuade some people to turn away from their sinful behavior For although they once had God's light and had experienced the [good things given by God](#) and shared in [the Holy Spirit](#),

## Hebrews 6:5

**who tasted God's good word...of (ULT)**

**They experienced for themselves the goodness of God's word (UST)**

Learning God's message is spoken of as if it were tasting food.  
Alternate translation: "who learned God's good message" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the powers...the age to come (ULT)**

**the spiritual powers of...age to come (UST)**

This means the power of God when his kingdom is fully present in all the world. In this sense, "the powers" refer to God himself, who holds all power. Alternate translation: "learned how God will work powerfully in the future" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> and who tasted [God's good word](#) and [the powers of the age](#) to come,

### UST

<sup>5</sup> They experienced for themselves [the goodness of God's word](#) and [the spiritual powers of](#) the [age](#) to come.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God's...of](#)
- [God's...word...of](#)
- [the powers](#)
- [good](#)
- [the age](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's](#)
- [God's word](#)
- [the spiritual powers of](#)
- [the goodness of](#)
- [age](#)

## Hebrews 6:6

**it is impossible to restore them again to repentance (ULT)**

**no one will be able to persuade them to stop sinning and to trust in him again (UST)**

“it is impossible to bring them back to repent again”

**This is because...crucify the Son of God for themselves again (ULT)**

**That is because it is as though these people have nailed the Son of God to his cross again (UST)**

When people turn away from God, it is as though they crucify Jesus again. Alternate translation: “it is like they crucify for themselves the very Son of God again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the Son of God (ULT)**

**the Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [This is because...crucify...again](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [repentance](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [That is because it is as though...have nailed...to his cross again](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [stop sinning and to trust in him](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> but who then fell away—it is impossible to restore them again to [repentance](#). [This is because](#) they [crucify](#) the [Son of God](#) for themselves [again](#), and publicly shame him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But now, if these people reject the Messiah, no one will be able to persuade them to [stop sinning and to trust in him](#) again! [That is because it is as though](#) these people [have nailed](#) the [Son of God to his cross again](#)! They are causing people to despise the Messiah in front of others.

## Hebrews 6:7

**the land...that drinks in the...rain (ULT)**  
**land...on which rain has frequently fallen...on which**  
**rain has frequently fallen (UST)**

Farmland that benefits from much rain is spoken of as if it were a person who drinks in the rainwater. Alternate translation: "the land that absorbs the rain" (See: [Personification](#))

**that produces plants (ULT)**  
**plants grow (UST)**

Farmland that produces crops is spoken of as if it gives birth to them. Alternate translation: "that produces plants" (See: [Personification](#))

**receives a blessing from God (ULT)**  
**God has blessed...the good use of (UST)**

Rain and crops are seen as proof that God has helped the farmland. The farmland is spoken of as if it were a person who could receive God's blessing. (See: [Personification](#))

**a blessing from God (ULT)**  
**God has blessed...the (UST)**

Here "blessing" means help from God, not spoken words.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a blessing](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [has blessed](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For the land that drinks in the rain that often comes on it, and that produces plants useful to those for whom the land was also cultivated, receives [a blessing](#) from [God](#).

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Think about this: [God has blessed](#) land on which rain has frequently fallen and on which plants grow for the good use of the farmers who cultivate the soil.

## Hebrews 6:8

**about to be cursed (ULT)**

**farmer will curse (UST)**

This speaks of "curse" as if it were a place to which a person could draw near. Alternate translation: "is in danger of God cursing it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Its end is to be burned (ULT)**

**It has become land that the...whose plants he will burn away (UST)**

The farmer will burn everything in the field.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [cursed](#)
- [thorns](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [farmer...curse](#)
- [thorns](#)

**ULT**

<sup>8</sup> But land that bears [thorns](#) and thistles is worthless and is about to be [cursed](#). Its end is to be burned.

**UST**

<sup>8</sup> But what will happen to people who do not obey God is like what happens to land on which only [thorns](#) and thistles grow. Such land is worthless. It has become land that the [farmer](#) will [curse](#) and whose plants he will burn away.

## Hebrews 6:9

### we are convinced (ULT)

### You can see...I am certain (UST)

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun “we,” he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: “I am convinced” or “I am certain” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### concerning you...of better things (ULT)

### I am warning you...that...At the same time...you are doing better than that (UST)

This means they are doing better than those who have rejected God, disobeyed him, and now can no longer repent so that God will forgive them ([Hebrews 6:4-6](#)). Alternate translation: “that you are doing better things than what I have mentioned”

### things related to...salvation (ULT)

### You are doing the things that show...that God is saving you (UST)

The abstract noun “salvation” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “things that concern God saving you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [salvation](#)
- [beloved ones](#)
- [we are convinced](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that God is saving you](#)
- [dear friends, not to reject the Messiah](#)
- [You can see...I am certain](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But [we are convinced](#) of better things concerning you, [beloved ones](#), things related to [salvation](#), even if we speak like this.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [You can see](#) that I am warning you, [dear friends, not to reject the Messiah](#). At the same time, [I am certain](#) that you are doing better than that. You are doing the things that show [that God is saving you](#), even though we speak like this.

## Hebrews 6:10

**For God is not unjust, that he would forget (ULT)**  
**Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook (UST)**

This double negative can mean that God in his justice will remember what good things his people have done. Alternate translation: "For God is just and therefore will certainly remember" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**for his name (ULT)**  
**for him (UST)**

God's "name" is a metonym that stands for God himself. Alternate translation: "for him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- is...unjust
- love
- God
- saints
- having served
- serving them
- work
- name

### Translation Words - UST

- Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook
- how you have loved
- Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook
- your fellow believers
- helped
- how you are still helping them
- all you have done
- him

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For [God](#) is not [unjust](#), that he would forget your [work](#) and the [love](#) that you have shown for his [name](#), [having served](#) the [saints](#) and still [serving them](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> [Since God always acts justly, he will not overlook all you have done](#) for [him](#); he will not overlook [how you have loved](#) and [helped your fellow believers](#), and [how you are still helping them](#).

## Hebrews 6:11

### We greatly desire that (ULT)

### We greatly desire (UST)

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun “we,” he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: “I greatly desire” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### diligence (ULT)

### continue (UST)

careful, hard work

### to the end (ULT)

### very end of...lives (UST)

The implicit meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “to the end of your lives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the...in order...to make...your hope...certain (ULT)

### the...so that to...you will be sure you will receive all that God promised to give you (UST)

“in order to have complete certainty that you will receive what God has promised you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hope](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [you will receive all that God promised to give you](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> We greatly desire that each of you may show the same diligence to the end, in order to make your [hope](#) certain.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> We greatly desire that each of you continue to show the same effort you are showing now, so that to the very end of your lives, you will be sure [you will receive all that God promised to give you](#).



## Hebrews 6:12

### imitators (ULT)

#### to do what other believers have done (UST)

An "imitator" is someone who copies the behavior of someone else.

### who...inherit the promises (ULT)

#### are receiving what God promised them (UST)

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "receive what God promised them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [who...inherit](#)
- [faith](#)
- [promises](#)
- [imitators](#)
- [patience](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [are receiving](#)
- [they trusted in him](#)
- [what God promised them](#)
- [to do what other believers have done](#)
- [were patient](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> This is so that you will not become lazy, but [imitators](#) of those who by [faith](#) and [patience inherit](#) the [promises](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> I do not want you to be lazy. Instead, I want you [to do what other believers have done](#), those who [are receiving what God promised them](#), because [they trusted in him](#) and [were patient](#).

## Hebrews 6:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- when...made his promise
- For...to Abraham
- to swear
- he swore

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- promised to do great things
- Abraham
- whom he could ask to force himself to do those things
- he asked

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For [when God made his promise to Abraham, he swore](#) by himself, since he had no one greater by whom [to swear](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> When [God promised to do great things](#) for [Abraham](#), there was no one greater than himself [whom he could ask to force himself to do those things](#). So [he asked](#) himself.

## Hebrews 6:14

**He said (ULT)**

**Then he said to Abraham (UST)**

God said

**I will greatly increase you (ULT)**

**I will certainly greatly increase the number of your descendants (UST)**

Here "increase" stands for give descendants. Alternate translation: "I will give you many descendants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless](#)
- [bless](#)
- [I will greatly increase](#)
- [I will greatly increase](#)
- [I will certainly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I will...bless](#)
- [I will...bless](#)
- [I will certainly greatly increase the number of...descendants](#)
- [I will certainly greatly increase the number of...descendants](#)
- [certainly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> He said, "[I will certainly bless](#) you, and [I will greatly increase](#) you."

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Then he said to Abraham, "[I will certainly bless](#) you and [I will certainly greatly increase the number of](#) your [descendants](#)."

## Hebrews 6:15

### what was promised (ULT)

### God did for him what he had promised (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what God promised him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [promised](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God did for him what he had promised](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> In this way, Abraham obtained what was [promised](#) after he had patiently waited.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> So after Abraham patiently waited for God to do what he promised, [God did for him what he had promised](#).

## Hebrews 6:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [swear](#)
- [an oath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [promise something](#)
- [what they promise](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For people [swear](#) by someone greater than themselves. At the end of each of their disputes, [an oath](#) serves as confirmation.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> Keep in mind that when people [promise something](#), they ask a more important person to punish them if they do not do [what they promise](#). This is how all such disputes are settled.

## Hebrews 6:17

### to the heirs of the promise (ULT)

### to us who would receive what he had promised (UST)

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: “to those who would receive what he promised” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of the...the unchangeable quality...of...his...purpose (ULT)

### what he had promised that he would not change...

### what...he...had planned to do (UST)

“that his purpose would never change” or “that he would always do what he said he would do”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [promise](#)
- [heirs](#)
- [with an oath](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [what he had promised](#)
- [to us who would receive](#)
- [what he promised](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> When [God](#) decided to show more clearly to the [heirs](#) of the [promise](#) the unchangeable quality of his purpose, he guaranteed it [with an oath](#).

### UST

<sup>17</sup> So when [God](#) wanted to demonstrate very clearly [to us who would receive what he had promised](#) that he would not change what he had planned to do, he said that he would declare himself guilty if he did not do [what he promised](#).

## Hebrews 6:18

**who have fled for refuge (ULT)**  
**we have fled to him (UST)**

Believers, who trust in God for him to protect them, are spoken of as if they were running to a safe place. Alternate translation: “we, who have trusted him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**we...will have a strong encouragement...to hold firmly to the hope set before us (ULT)**  
**to strongly encourage us...That is why...we might continue confidently to expect to receive what he promised us (UST)**

Trust in God is spoken of as if encouragement were an object that could be presented to a person and that person could hold on to it. Alternate translation: “will continue to trust in God just as he encouraged us to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**set before us (ULT)**  
**to receive (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that God has placed before us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [hope](#)
- [strong](#)
- [a...encouragement](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Now, God](#)
- [what he promised us](#)
- [strongly](#)
- [to...encourage us](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> He did this so that by two unchangeable things—with which it is impossible for [God](#) to lie—we, who have fled for refuge, will have a [strong encouragement](#) to hold firmly to the [hope](#) set before us.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> He did that to [strongly encourage us](#), because he has done two things that cannot change: He promised to help us, and would declare himself guilty if he did not. [Now, God](#) cannot lie. That is why we have fled to him in order that we might continue confidently to expect to receive [what he promised us](#).

## Hebrews 6:19

### Connecting Statement:

Having finished his third warning and encouragement to the believers, the writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

**as...a...anchor...both...secure and reliable...for the soul (ULT)**

**It is as if we were a ship...anchor...is holding us firmly in one place. The one we confidently expect to hold us...As well, this is why (UST)**

Just as an anchor keeps a boat from drifting in the water, Jesus keeps us secure in God's presence. Alternate translation: "that causes us to live securely in God's presence" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**a...anchor...reliable...secure and (ULT)**  
**anchor...is holding...us...firmly in one place...As well, this is why (UST)**

Here the words "secure" and "reliable" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the complete reliability of the anchor. Alternate translation: "a completely reliable anchor" (See: [Doublet](#))

**this hope...that even enters into the inner place behind the curtain (ULT)**

**Yes, we confidently expect to receive what God has promised to do for us...is Jesus...he is just like the high priests who go behind the curtain into the innermost part of the temple, where God is present (UST)**

Confidence is spoken of as if it were a person who could go into the most holy place of the temple. (See: [Personification](#))

**the inner place behind (ULT)**

**the...the innermost part of...temple (UST)**

This was the most holy place in the temple. It was thought to be the place where God was most intensely present among his people. In this passage, this place stands for heaven and God's throne room. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)
- [curtain](#)
- [as](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [us](#)
- [behind...curtain...the...where God is present](#)
- [It is as if we were a ship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> We have this hope [as](#) both a secure and reliable anchor for the [soul](#), that even enters into the inner place behind the [curtain](#),

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Yes, we confidently expect to receive what God has promised to do for us. [It is as if we were a ship](#), whose anchor is holding [us](#) firmly in one place. The one we confidently expect to hold us is Jesus. As well, this is why he is just like the high priests who go [behind](#) the [curtain](#) into the innermost part of the temple, [where God is present](#).



## Hebrews 6:20

### after the order of Melchizedek (ULT) in the way that Melchizedek was (UST)

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: “in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [high](#)
- [of Melchizedek](#)
- [forever](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [a high priest](#)
- [Melchizedek was](#)
- [forever](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> where [Jesus](#), who went before us, has entered into that place on our behalf. He has become a [high](#) priest [forever](#) after the order [of Melchizedek](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Jesus](#) went into God's presence ahead of us to allow us to enter in that same place with God, too. Jesus has become [a high priest forever](#), in the way that [Melchizedek was](#) a high priest.

## **Hebrews 7**

### **Hebrews 7 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 7:17, 21, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **High priest**

Only a high priest could offer sacrifices so that God could forgive sins, so Jesus had to be a high priest. The law of Moses commanded that the high priest be from the tribe of Levi, but Jesus was from the tribe of Judah. God made him a priest like the priest Melchizedek, who lived at the time of Abraham, before there was a tribe of Levi.

## Hebrews 7:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer of Hebrews continues his comparison of Jesus as priest to Melchizedek as priest.

### of Salem (ULT)

### city of Salem (UST)

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings (ULT)

### Abraham...his men who were returning home from defeating the armies of the four kings (UST)

This refers to when Abraham and his men went and defeated the armies of four kings in order to rescue his nephew, Lot, and his family. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed](#)
- [Most High](#)
- [of God](#)
- [priest](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Melchizedek](#)
- [slaughter](#)
- [king](#)
- [kings](#)
- [returning](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Melchizedek blessed](#)
- [who rules...universe](#)
- [of God](#)
- [and was also a priest](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Melchizedek](#)
- [defeating...armies](#)
- [king of](#)
- [four kings](#)
- [his men who were returning home](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For this [Melchizedek](#), [king](#) of Salem, [priest of God Most High](#), was the one who met [Abraham returning](#) from the [slaughter](#) of the [kings](#) and [blessed](#) him.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Now I will say more about this man [Melchizedek](#). He was the [king of](#) the city of Salem [and was also a priest of God](#), [who rules](#) the [universe](#). He met [Abraham](#) and [his men who were returning home](#) from [defeating](#) the [armies](#) of the [four kings](#). [Melchizedek blessed](#) Abraham.

## Hebrews 7:2

**to him (ULT)**

**Then...gave to him (UST)**

"It was to Melchizedek"

**king of righteousness...king...of peace (ULT)**

**king who rules righteously...king...peacefully (UST)**

"righteous king...peaceful king"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of righteousness
- Abraham
- a tenth
- king
- king (2)
- king (3)
- of peace

### Translation Words - UST

- who rules righteously
- Abraham
- one tenth
- king
- his name...means "the king (2)
- who rules (3)
- peacefully

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [Abraham](#) also gave to him [a tenth](#) of everything. His name first indeed means "[king of righteousness](#)," and then also "[king of Salem](#)," that is, "[king of peace](#)."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then [Abraham](#) gave to him [one tenth](#) of all the things he took after winning the battle. Now Melchizedek's name means first, "[king who rules righteously](#)," and, since Salem means "peace," [his name](#) also [means "the king who rules peacefully"](#)."

## Hebrews 7:3

**He is without father, without mother, without ancestors, with neither beginning of days nor end of life**

It is possible to think from this passage that Melchizedek was neither born nor did he die. However, it is likely that all the writer means is that the Scriptures provide no information about Melchizedek's ancestry, birth, or death.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of life
- of God
- Son of God
- a priest
- of days

### Translation Words - UST

- nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died
- of God
- Son of God
- a priest
- nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He is without father, without mother, without genealogy, having neither beginning [of days](#) nor end [of life](#). Instead, resembling the [Son of God](#), he remains [a priest](#) forever.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> The scriptures provide us with no record of Melchizedek's father, mother, or ancestors; [nor do the scriptures tell us when he was born or when he died](#). It is as if he continues to be [a priest](#) forever. In this way, he is a little like the [Son of God](#).

## Hebrews 7:4

### Connecting Statement:

The writer states that the priesthood of Melchizedek is better than Aaron's priesthood and then reminds them that the priesthood of Aaron did not make anything perfect.

**this man was (ULT)**

**this man Melchizedek was from the fact (UST)**

"Melchizedek was"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [a tenth](#)
- [patriarch](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Abraham](#)
- [a tenth](#)
- [our famous ancestor](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But see how great this man was, to whom the [patriarch Abraham](#) gave [a tenth](#) of the things that he had taken in battle.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> You can realize how great this man Melchizedek was from the fact that [Abraham, our famous ancestor](#), gave him [a tenth](#) of the best things he took from the battle with the kings.

## Hebrews 7:5

**the sons of Levi who receive the priesthood (ULT)**  
**the...descendants of Abraham's great-grandson...Levi...**  
**were priests, should take tithes (UST)**

The author says this because not all of Levi's sons became priests.  
 Alternate translation: "The descendants of Levi who became priests"  
 (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

**from the people (ULT)**  
**who...God's people (UST)**

"from the people of Israel"

**from their brothers (ULT)**  
**those people...fellow descendants (UST)**

Here "brothers" means they are all related to each other through Abraham. Alternate translation: "from their relatives"

**they have come from Abraham's body (ULT)**  
**from...who were their relatives...were...of Abraham (UST)**

This is a way of saying that they were descendants of Abraham. Alternate translation: "they, too, are descendants of Abraham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a command](#)
- [from...brothers](#)
- [sons](#)
- [law](#)
- [priesthood](#)
- [Abraham's](#)
- [of Levi](#)
- [who receive](#)
- [people](#)
- [to collect tithes](#)
- [body](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [should take tithes](#)
- [fellow descendants](#)
- [descendants of Abraham's great-grandson](#)
- [laws God gave Moses](#)
- [were priests](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [should take tithes](#)
- [God's people](#)
- [should take tithes](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And those indeed of the [sons of Levi who receive](#) the [priesthood](#) have [a command](#) according to the [law to collect tithes](#) from the [people](#), that is, from their [brothers](#), even though they have come from [Abraham's body](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> According to the [laws God gave Moses](#), the [descendants of Abraham's great-grandson Levi](#), who [were priests, should take tithes](#) from [God's people](#) who were their relatives, that is even though those people also were [fellow descendants of Abraham](#).

- were...of



## Hebrews 7:6

**Melchizedek...whose descent was not traced from them (ULT)**

**this man Melchizedek, who...was not among the descendants of Levi (UST)**

"who was not a descendant of Levi"

**the one who had the promises (ULT)**

**the man to whom God promised many descendants (UST)**

The things that God promised to do for Abraham are spoken of as if they were objects that he could possess. Alternate translation: the one to whom God had spoken his promises" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed](#)
- [promises](#)
- [from Abraham](#)
- [received tithes](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [He...blessed Abraham](#)
- [the man to whom God promised many descendants](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [received a tenth of everything from](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But Melchizedek, whose descent was not traced from them, [received tithes from Abraham](#), and [blessed](#) the one who had the [promises](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But this man Melchizedek, who was not among the descendants of Levi, [received a tenth of everything from Abraham](#). [He](#) also [blessed Abraham](#), [the man to whom God promised many descendants](#).

## Hebrews 7:7

**the lesser person is blessed by the greater person (ULT)  
the more important people bless the less important  
people, just as Melchizedek blessed Abraham. So we  
know that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham  
(UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the more important person blesses the less important person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- is blessed

### Translation Words - UST

- bless...just as Melchizedek blessed Abraham. So we know that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But without any argument, the lesser person [is blessed](#) by the greater person.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Now everyone knows that the more important people [bless](#) the less important people, [just as Melchizedek blessed Abraham. So we know that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham.](#)

## Hebrews 7:8

### In...this...case...in that case (ULT)

**In the case of the priests who are descendants of Levi, they are all...in the case of Melchizedek (UST)**

These phrases are used to compare the Levite priests with Melchizedek. Your language may have a way to emphasize that the author is making a comparison.

### it is testified that he lives on (ULT)

**it is as if God testified that Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying (UST)**

It is never explicitly written in scripture that Melchizedek dies. The author of Hebrews speaks of this absence of information about Melchizedek's death in scripture as if it were a positive statement that he is still alive. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "scripture shows that he lives on" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [he lives on](#)
- [it is testified](#)
- [receive](#)
- [mortal](#)
- [tithes](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying](#)
- [it is as if God testified](#)
- [who received a tenth of everything from Abraham](#)
- [will die one day](#)
- [they received tithes](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> In this case, [mortal](#) men [receive tithes](#), but in that case [it is testified](#) that [he lives on](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> In the case of the priests who are descendants of Levi, they are all men who [will die one day](#), but even [they received tithes](#). However, in the case of Melchizedek, [who received a tenth of everything from Abraham—it is as if God testified](#) that [Melchizedek keeps on living, since scripture does not speak about him dying](#).

## Hebrews 7:9

**Levi, the one who received tithes, also paid tithes through Abraham (ULT)**

**Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him—those who received tithes from the people—paid tithes to Melchizedek because their ancestor Abraham paid tithes to him. When Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek...that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham (UST)**

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [who received](#)
- [tithes](#)
- [paid tithes](#)
- [in a manner of speaking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [tithes...paid...Abraham...to Melchizedek](#)
- [Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him...tithes...paid](#)
- [received...from the people](#)
- [tithes](#)
- [to Melchizedek...their ancestor...to him. When Abraham paid tithes](#)
- [as...it was](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> And, [in a manner of speaking](#), [Levi](#), the one [who received tithes](#), also [paid tithes](#) through [Abraham](#),

### UST

<sup>9</sup> And it was as though [Levi himself, and all the priests descended from him—those who received tithes from the people—paid tithes to Melchizedek](#) because [their ancestor Abraham paid tithes to him. When Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek it was](#) as though they acknowledged that Melchizedek was greater than Abraham.

## Hebrews 7:10

**Levi was...in the body of his ancestor (ULT)**  
**This is true...were...in Abraham's body (UST)**

Since Levi had not been born yet, the author speaks of him as still being in Abraham's body. In this way, the author argues that Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Melchizedek](#)
- [ancestor](#)
- [body](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Melchizedek](#)
- [Abraham's](#)
- [body](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> because Levi was still in the [body](#) of his [ancestor](#) when [Melchizedek](#) met Abraham.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> This is true because we can say that Levi and his descendants were still in [Abraham's body](#) when [Melchizedek](#) met Abraham.

## Hebrews 7:11

### So (ULT)

### So if (UST)

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

**what further need was there for another priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek, and to not be called according to the order of Aaron (ULT)  
the...Aaron and...Those priests who came after Aaron would have been adequate. In that case, no other priest like Melchizedek would have been necessary (UST)**

This question emphasizes that it was unexpected that priests come after the order of Melchizedek. Alternate translation: “no one would have needed another priest, one who was like Melchizedek and not like Aaron, to arise.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to arise (ULT)

### other...Melchizedek (UST)

“to come” or “to appear”

### according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT)

### the...other...like Melchizedek (UST)

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: “in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest”

### to not be called according to the order of Aaron (ULT)

### Aaron...Those...who came after Aaron...no (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “not be after the manner of Aaron” or “who is not a priest like Aaron” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [priesthood](#)
- [priest](#)
- [of Melchizedek](#)
- [of Aaron](#)
- [Levitical](#)
- [received the law](#)
- [people](#)
- [to arise](#)
- [perfection](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> So if [perfection](#) was through the [Levitical priesthood](#) (for under it the [people received the law](#)), what further need was there for another [priest to arise](#) according to the order of [of Melchizedek](#), and to not be called according to the order of [of Aaron](#)?

### UST

<sup>11</sup> [God gave](#) the [law to his people](#) at the same time he gave regulations about the priests. So if the [priests who](#) were [descended from Aaron](#) and [his ancestor Levi could have provided](#) a way for God [to forgive people for disobeying those laws](#). Those priests who came after Aaron would have been adequate. In that case, no [other priest](#) like [Melchizedek](#) would have been necessary.

## Translation Words - UST

- priests who...descended from...his ancestor Levi
- priest
- other...Melchizedek
- Aaron
- priests who...descended from...his ancestor Levi
- God gave...law to his people
- people
- other...Melchizedek
- could have provided...to forgive...for disobeying those laws

## Hebrews 7:12

**For when the priesthood is changed, of necessity a change of the law also happens (ULT)**

**But we know those priests were not adequate, because a new type of priest like Melchizedek has come. And since God has appointed a new type of priest, he also had to change the law (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For when God changed the priesthood, he also had to change the law" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priesthood](#)
- [of the law](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a new type...priest](#)
- [law](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For when the [priesthood](#) is changed, of necessity a change [of the law](#) also happens.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> But we know those priests were not adequate, because a new type of priest like Melchizedek has come. And since God has appointed [a new type](#) of [priest](#), he also had to change the [law](#).



## Hebrews 7:13

### For...whom (ULT)

### Jesus, the one about whom (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

### the one about whom...these things are said (ULT)

### Jesus, the one about whom...I am saying these things (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "about whom I am speaking" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- has ever served
- tribe

### Translation Words - UST

- as priest
- served
- the tribe of Judah

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For the one about whom these things are said belongs to another [tribe](#), from which no one [has ever served](#) at the [altar](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Jesus, the one about whom I am saying these things, is not a descendant of Levi. Instead, he came from [the tribe of Judah](#), which never gave any person who [served as priest](#).

## Hebrews 7:14

### For (ULT)

### For (UST)

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### our Lord is descended from Judah (ULT)

### our Lord descended from Judah (UST)

The words “our Lord” refer to Jesus.

### from Judah (ULT)

### from Judah (UST)

“from the tribe of Judah”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- priests
- Judah
- Moses
- a tribe

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- priests
- Judah
- but Moses
- tribe

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For it is clear that our [Lord](#) is descended from [Judah](#), [a tribe](#) about which [Moses](#) said nothing concerning [priests](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> For it is clear that our [Lord](#) descended from [Judah](#), [but Moses](#) never spoke about [priests](#) coming from that [tribe](#).

## Hebrews 7:15

### General Information:

This quote comes from a psalm of King David.

**this is even more clear (ULT)**

**Furthermore, we know that...it is even more obvious that (UST)**

"We can understand even more clearly." Here "we" refers to the author and his audience. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

**if...another priest arises (ULT)**

**since...another priest has appeared (UST)**

"if another priest comes"

**in the likeness of Melchizedek (ULT)**

**the priests descended from Levi were inadequate...who is like Melchizedek (UST)**

This means that Christ as a priest has things in common with Melchizedek as a priest. Alternate translation: "in the same way that Melchizedek was a priest"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest](#)
- [of Melchizedek](#)
- [arises](#)
- [likeness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest](#)
- [Melchizedek](#)
- [has appeared](#)
- [who is like](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And this is even more clear, if another [priest arises](#) in the [likeness of Melchizedek](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Furthermore, we know that the priests descended from Levi were inadequate, since it is even more obvious that another [priest has appeared who is like Melchizedek](#).

## Hebrews 7:16

**He...not based on a law (ULT)**

**This priest is Jesus; he...a priest, but not because he fulfilled what God's law (UST)**

"His becoming priest was not based on the law"

**a law of physical descent (ULT)**

**God's law required about being a descendant of Levi (UST)**

The idea of human descent is spoken of as if it had only to do with the flesh of one's body. Alternate translation: "the law of human descent" or "the law about priests' descendants becoming priests" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of an...life
- of...descent
- physical
- the power
- a law

### Translation Words - UST

- a life that
- required
- about being a descendant of Levi
- nothing can
- God's law

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> He became a priest, not based on [a law](#) of [physical descent](#), but based on [the power of an](#) indestructible [life](#).

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> This priest is Jesus; he became a priest, but not because he fulfilled what [God's law required about being a descendant of Levi](#). Instead, he has the kind of power that came from [a life that nothing can](#) destroy.

## Hebrews 7:17

**For scripture testifies about him (ULT)**  
**We know this since God confirmed it in...scripture passage (UST)**

This speaks about scripture as if it were a person who could witness about something. Alternate translation: "For God witnesses about him through the scriptures" or "For this is what was written about him in the scripture" (See: [Personification](#))

**according to the order of Melchizedek (ULT)**  
**the...just as Melchizedek was a priest (UST)**

There were two groups of priests. One was made up of the descendants of Levi. The other was made up of Melchizedek and Jesus Christ. Alternate translation: "according to the line of Melchizedek" or "according to the priesthood of Melchizedek"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [scripture testifies about him](#)
- [a priest](#)
- [of Melchizedek](#)
- [forever](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God confirmed it in...scripture passage](#)
- [a priest](#)
- [Melchizedek](#)
- [eternally](#)

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For [scripture testifies about him](#): "You are [a priest forever](#) according to the order [of Melchizedek](#)."

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> We know this since [God confirmed it in the scripture passage](#) in which he said to his Son, "You are [a priest eternally](#), just as [Melchizedek](#) was a priest."

## Hebrews 7:18

**set aside...the former regulation is (ULT)**  
**God withdrew...what he had first commanded about...priests (UST)**

Here "set aside" is a metaphor for making something invalid. This can be stated in active form. AT "God made the commandment invalid" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [regulation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what he...commanded about...priests](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> For the former [regulation](#) is set aside because it is weak and useless,

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> God withdrew [what he](#) had first [commanded about](#) the [priests](#) because those priests are unable to make sinful people holy.

## Hebrews 7:19

**nothing...the law made...perfect (ULT)**

**No one...was able to become good by obeying the laws (UST)**

The law is spoken of as if it were a person who could act. Alternate translation: "no one could become perfect by obeying the law" (See: [Personification](#))

**is introduced...a better hope (ULT)**

**that God gave Moses...God gave us a better reason to have confidence in him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has introduced a better hope" or "God has given us reason for a more confident hope (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**through which we come near to God (ULT)**

**the...because he makes it possible for us to come near to him (UST)**

Worshipping God and having his favor are spoken of coming near to him. Alternate translation: "and because of this hope we approach God" or "and because of this hope we worship God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- law
- a...hope
- made...perfect

### Translation Words - UST

- to...him
- laws
- reason to have confidence in him
- was able to become good by obeying

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> (for the [law made](#) nothing [perfect](#)), and a better [hope](#) is introduced, through which we come near [to God](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> No one [was able to become good by obeying](#) the [laws](#) that God gave Moses. On the other hand, God gave us a better [reason to have confidence in him](#), because he makes it possible for us to come near to [him](#).

## Hebrews 7:20

### General Information:

This quote comes from the same psalm of David as [Hebrews 7:17](#).

**And this was not done without an oath (ULT)  
Furthermore, when God appointed the Messiah as a  
priest, he made certain of it when he solemnly declared  
it (UST)**

The word "it" refers to Jesus becoming the eternal priest. It can be stated clearly who made the oath. Alternate translation: "And God did not choose this new priest without swearing an oath!" or "And it was because God swore an oath that the Lord became the new priest!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priests](#)
- [an oath](#)
- [oath](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priests](#)
- [he...when he solemnly declared it](#)
- [a declaration](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> And this was not done without [an oath](#)! For others became [priests](#) without any [oath](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Furthermore, when God appointed the Messiah as a priest, [he](#) made certain of it [when he solemnly declared it](#). The men from the tribe of Levi become [priests](#) without such [a declaration](#).



## Hebrews 7:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- The Lord
- he will...change his mind
- a priest
- forever
- an oath
- has sworn

### Translation Words - UST

- The Lord
- he will...change his mind
- a priest
- forever
- appointed...be a priest
- has solemnly declared

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> but Jesus became a priest with [an oath](#), through God saying to him, "[The Lord has sworn](#) and [he will](#) not [change his mind](#): 'You are [a priest forever](#).'"

### UST

<sup>21</sup> But when he [appointed](#) the Messiah to [be a priest](#), it was by these words that the psalmist wrote in scripture: "[The Lord has solemnly declared](#) and [he will](#) not [change his mind](#), 'You will be [a priest forever](#)!'"

## Hebrews 7:22

### Connecting Statement:

The writer then assures these Jewish believers that Christ has the better priesthood because he lives forever and the priests that descended from Aaron all died.

**has become the guarantee of a better covenant (ULT)  
guarantees that the new covenant will be better than  
the old one (UST)**

“has told us that we can be sure that there will be a better covenant”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [covenant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [the new covenant](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> In the same way also, [Jesus](#) has become the guarantee of a better [covenant](#).

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Because of that, [Jesus](#) himself guarantees that [the new covenant](#) will be better than the old one.

## Hebrews 7:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priests](#)
- [death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priests](#)
- [they would always die](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The former [priests](#) were many in number, since [death](#) prevented them from continuing in office.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> And formerly, priests could not keep serving as priests because [they would always die](#). So there were many [priests](#) to take the place of the ones who died.

## Hebrews 7:24

**he has a permanent priesthood (ULT)**  
**will continue to be a high priest forever (UST)**

A priest's work is spoken of as if it were an object that Jesus possesses. This can be worded to avoid the abstract noun. Alternate translation: "he is a priest permanently" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a...priesthood
- forever

### Translation Words - UST

- a high priest
- eternally

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> But because Jesus continues to live [forever](#), he has a permanent [priesthood](#).

### UST

<sup>24</sup> But because Jesus lives [eternally](#), he will continue to be [a high priest](#) forever.

## Hebrews 7:25

### Therefore...he is...able (ULT)

### So...Jesus can (UST)

You can make explicit what "Therefore" implies. Alternate translation: "Because Christ is our high priest who lives forever, he" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### those who approach God through him (ULT)

### those who come...God, since he (UST)

"those who come to God because of what Jesus has done"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- because he...lives
- God
- to intercede
- he is...able

### Translation Words - UST

- save
- lives
- God
- to plead with God
- Jesus can

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Therefore [he is](#) also [able to save](#) completely those who approach [God](#) through him, [because he](#) always [lives to intercede](#) for them.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> So [Jesus can](#) completely and eternally [save](#) those who come to [God](#), since he [lives](#) forever [to plead with God](#) to forgive them and keep them safe.

## Hebrews 7:26

**has become higher than the heavens (ULT)**  
**has now taken him up to the highest heaven (UST)**

“God has raised him up to the highest heavens.” The author speaks of possessing more honor and power than anyone else as if it were position that is up above all things. Alternate translation: “God has given him more honor and power than anyone else” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [He is holy](#)
- [blameless](#)
- [a high priest](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [living among sinners](#)
- [He was holy](#)
- [he did no wrong](#)
- [high priest that](#)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> For such [a high priest](#) is indeed suitable for us. [He is holy, blameless,](#) pure, separated from [sinners](#), and has become higher than the [heavens](#).

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Jesus is the kind of [high priest that](#) we need. [He was holy, he did no wrong,](#) and he was innocent. God has now separated him from [living among sinners](#), and has now taken him up to the highest [heaven](#).

## Hebrews 7:27

### General Information:

Here the words "He," "his," and "himself" refer to Christ.

### Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- high priests
- people
- sacrifices
- as
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- sins
- Jewish high priests
- people
- to cover
- as well as year by year
- day

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> He does not have the need, [as](#) the [high priests](#), to offer up [sacrifices](#) every [day](#), first for his own [sins](#), and then for the sins of the [people](#). For he did this once for all, when he offered himself.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The [Jewish high priests](#) need to sacrifice animals day by [day as well as year by year](#). They do this, firstly, to cover their own sins, and then [to cover](#) the [sins](#) of other people. But because Jesus never sinned, he does not need to do that. The only thing he needed to do to save [people](#) was to sacrifice himself once, and that is exactly what he did!

## Hebrews 7:28

**the law...appoints as high priests men who have weaknesses (ULT)**

**the...in...law...priests, who were appointed...sinned like all humans sin (UST)**

Here “the law” is a metonym for the men who appointed the high priests according to the law of Moses. The focus is not on the men who did this, but on the fact that they did this according to the law. Alternate translation: “according to the law, men appoint as high priests men who have weaknesses” or “for according to the law, men who have weaknesses are appointed as high priests” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**men...who have weaknesses (ULT)**  
**humans sin...were...sinned like all (UST)**

“men who are spiritually weak” or “men who are weak against sin”

**the word...of the oath, which came after the law...a Son (ULT)**

**as commanded...God...the...solemnly declared after he had given his laws to Moses that he would appoint his Son...Now his Son, who is God the (UST)**

The “word of the oath” represents God who made the oath. Alternate translation: “God appointed a Son by his oath, which he made after he gave the law” or “after he had given the law, God swore an oath and appointed his Son” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**a Son (ULT)**  
**that he would appoint his Son (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**who has been made perfect (ULT)**  
**Son, Jesus...the only perfect high priest (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who has completely obeyed God and become mature” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- law
- a Son
- appoints
- as high priests
- who has been made perfect
- forever
- oath

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> For the [law appoints as high priests](#) men who have weaknesses. But the word of the [oath](#), which came after the [law](#), appointed [a Son, who has been made perfect forever](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> We need a high priest like Jesus, because the [priests, who](#) were [appointed](#) as commanded in the [law](#), sinned like all humans sin. But God [solemnly declared](#) after he had given [his laws to Moses that he would appoint his Son](#) to be high priest. Now his Son, who is God the [Son, Jesus, is forever the only perfect high priest](#).



## Translation Words - UST

- in...law
- his laws to Moses
- that he would appoint his Son
- appointed
- priests, who
- Son, Jesus...the only perfect high priest
- is forever
- solemnly declared

## Hebrews 8

### Hebrews 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The author finishes describing how and why Jesus is the most important high priest. Then he begins to speak about how the new covenant is better to the covenant God made with Moses. (See: [covenant](#))

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 8:8-12, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### New covenant

The author tells how Jesus has established a new covenant that is better than the covenant that God established with the Israelites. (See: [covenant](#))

## Hebrews 8:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer, having shown that Christ's priesthood is better than the earthly priesthood, shows that the earthly priesthood was a pattern of heavenly things. Christ has a superior ministry, a superior covenant.

### Now (ULT) that (UST)

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### what we are saying (ULT) I have written (UST)

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Because the writer does not include his readers here, the word "we" is exclusive. Alternate translation: "I am saying" or "I am writing" (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Pronouns](#))

### We have a high priest (ULT) we have a high priest (UST)

The author is including the readers here, so the word "we" is inclusive. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

### has sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty (ULT) has sat down to rule as the king (UST)

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Hebrews 1:3](#). Alternate translation: "sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of the Majesty" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [Majesty](#)
- [a high priest](#)
- [throne](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [to rule](#)
- [as the king](#)
- [a high priest](#)
- [as the king](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the point of what we are saying is this: We have [a high priest](#) who has sat down at [the right hand](#) of the [throne](#) of the [Majesty](#) in the [heavens](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> The most important part of everything that I have written is that we have [a high priest](#) who has sat down [to rule as the king](#) in [heaven](#).

## Hebrews 8:2

### the true tabernacle that the Lord, not a man, set up

People built the earthly tabernacle out of animal skins fastened to a wooden framework, and they set it up in the manner of a tent. Here "true tabernacle" means the heavenly tabernacle that God created.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- holy place
- true
- He is a servant
- tabernacle

#### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- in...sanctuary
- That is...true sacred tent
- He serves
- in...true place of worship in heaven

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> [He is a servant](#) in the [holy place](#) and the [true tabernacle](#) that the [Lord](#), not a man, set up.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> [He serves](#) in the [sanctuary](#), that is, in the [true place of worship in heaven](#). [That is](#) the [true sacred tent](#), for the [Lord](#) set it up, not Moses.

## Hebrews 8:3

**For every high priest...is appointed (ULT)**

**every high priest...for...a...God appoints (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For God appoints every priest" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- gifts
- is appointed
- high priest
- sacrifices

### Translation Words - UST

- gifts
- God appoints
- high priest...a
- sacrifices...people's sins

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> For every [high priest is appointed](#) to offer both [gifts](#) and [sacrifices](#). Therefore it is necessary also for this one to have something that he might offer.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [God appoints](#) every [high priest](#) to offer [gifts](#) and [sacrifices](#) for the [people's sins](#). So since the Messiah became [a](#) high priest, he also had to offer something.

## Hebrews 8:4

### Now (ULT)

### Now if (UST)

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### according to the law (ULT)

### according to the law (UST)

“as God requires in the law”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts](#)
- [the law](#)
- [a priest](#)
- [earth](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gifts](#)
- [the law](#)
- [a priest at all](#)
- [earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Now if Christ were on [earth](#), he would not be [a priest](#) at all, since there are those who offer the [gifts](#) according to [the law](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Now if Christ were on [earth](#), he would not be [a priest at all](#), since there are those who offer the [gifts](#) according to [the law](#).

## Hebrews 8:5

**They serve a copy and shadow of the heavenly things (ULT)**

**priests in Jerusalem perform rituals that are only a copy of what the Messiah does in heaven (UST)**

The words “copy” and “shadow” have similar meanings and are metaphors meaning that something is not the real thing but it is similar to the real thing. These words emphasize that the priesthood and the earthly temple were images of Christ, the true high priest, and the heavenly temple. Alternate translation: “They serve what is a vague image of the heavenly things” or “They serve what is only similar to the heavenly things” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Doublet](#))

**just as Moses was warned by God when he was about to (ULT)**

**This is...when Moses was about to...God told him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “It is just as God warned Moses when Moses was” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**when he was about to construct the tabernacle (ULT)**  
**was about to set up the sacred tent (UST)**

Moses did not construct the tabernacle himself. He ordered the people to construct it. Alternate translation: “was about to command the people to construct the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**See (ULT)**

**Be sure that you (UST)**

“Make sure that”

**according to the pattern (ULT)**

**The...according to what I (UST)**

“to the design”

**that was shown to you (ULT)**

**what I...you (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that I showed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**on the mountain (ULT)**

**on Mount Sinai (UST)**

You can make explicit that “mountain” refers to Mount Sinai. Alternate translation: “on Mount Sinai” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [heavenly things](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> They [serve](#) a copy and [shadow](#) of the [heavenly things](#), [just as Moses was warned by God](#) when he was about to construct the [tabernacle](#). For God said, “See that you make everything according to the pattern that was shown to you on the mountain.”

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The priests in Jerusalem perform [rituals that are only a copy of what the Messiah does in heaven](#). [This is](#) because [when Moses](#) was about to set up the [sacred tent](#), [God told him](#), “Be sure that you make everything according to what I showed you on Mount Sinai!”

- was warned by God
- tabernacle
- Moses
- shadow
- just as
- serve

### Translation Words - UST

- Messiah does in heaven
- God told him
- sacred tent
- when Moses
- only a copy of what
- This is
- rituals that are



## Hebrews 8:6

### Connecting Statement:

This section begins to show that the new covenant is better than the old covenant with Israel and Judah.

### Christ has received (ULT) in a much better way (UST)

“God has given Christ”

### better...the mediator of a...covenant (ULT) is better...the...that he has agreed to...is (UST)

This means Christ caused a better covenant between God and humans to exist.

### of a...covenant...which is based on better promises (ULT) the...is...made of promises that God has given...than the laws that God gave Moses (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “covenant. It was this covenant that God made based on better promises” or “covenant. God promised better things when he made this covenant” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ministry](#)
- [of a...covenant](#)
- [promises](#)
- [the mediator](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Messiah serves...toward his people](#)
- [the...is](#)
- [promises that God has given](#)
- [that he has agreed to](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But now Christ has received a much better [ministry](#), just as he is also [the mediator of a](#) better [covenant](#), which is based on better [promises](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But now [the Messiah serves](#) in a much better way than the Jewish priests do. In the same way, the agreement [that he has agreed to toward his people is](#) made of [promises that God has given](#) and so is better than the laws that God gave Moses.

## Hebrews 8:7

**that covenant...for a second covenant (ULT)**

**this...the first covenant...second covenant (UST)**

The words “first” and “second” are ordinal numbers. Alternate translation: “old covenant...new covenant” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**had been faultless (ULT)**

**was defective (UST)**

“had been perfect”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [faultless](#)
- [there would have been](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [defective](#)
- [God needed](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> For if that covenant had been [faultless](#), [there would have been](#) no need for a second covenant.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> [God needed](#) to establish this second covenant, because the first covenant was [defective](#).

## Hebrews 8:8

### General Information:

In this quotation the prophet Jeremiah foretold of a new covenant that God would make.

**with them (ULT)**

**the Israelites (UST)**

“with the people of Israel”

**See (ULT)**

**Listen (UST)**

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**the house of Israel and with the house of Judah (ULT)**

**the people of Israel and the people of Judah (UST)**

The people of Israel and Judah are spoken of as if they were houses.

Alternate translation: “the people of Israel and with the people of Judah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> For when God found fault with them, he said, “See, [the days](#) are coming— says [the Lord](#)— when I will make a new [covenant](#) with the [house of Israel](#) and with the [house of Judah](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Because God declared that the Israelites were guilty of not obeying the first covenant, he wanted a new covenant. This is what a prophet wrote about that: “[The Lord](#) says, ‘Listen! There will soon be a time when I will fulfill a new [covenant](#) toward the [people of Israel](#) and [the people of Judah](#).’

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [a...covenant](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [the days](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [The Lord](#)
- [a...covenant](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [There will...be a time when](#)
- [the...people](#)
- [people...the](#) (2)

## Hebrews 8:9

**that I took them by their hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt (ULT)**

**That...I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child (UST)**

This metaphor represents God's great love and concern. Alternate translation: "I led them out of Egypt like a father leads his young child" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [by...hand](#)
- [the day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord](#)
- [agreement](#)
- [agreement](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [like a father](#)
- [when](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> It will not be like the [covenant](#) that I made with their [ancestors](#) on [the day](#) that I took them by their [hand](#) to lead them out of the land [of Egypt](#). For they did not continue in my [covenant](#), and I disregarded them— says [the Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> That [agreement](#) will not be like the [agreement](#) I made with their [ancestors](#) [when](#) I led them out of [Egypt like a father](#) leads his young child. They did not continue to obey, so I let them alone,' says [the Lord](#).

## Hebrews 8:10

### General Information:

This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.

### with the house of Israel (ULT)

### Israelites (UST)

The people of Israel are spoken of as if they were a house. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### after those days (ULT)

### after the first agreement has ended (UST)

“after that time”

### I will put my laws into their minds (ULT)

### the...I will enable them to understand my laws...their (UST)

God’s requirements are spoken of as if they were objects that could be placed somewhere. People’s ability to think is spoken of as if it were a place. Alternate translation: “I will enable them to understand my laws” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### I will write them on their hearts (ULT)

### with...I will enable them...truly obey them (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for a person’s inner being. The phrase “write them on their hearts” is a metaphor for enabling people to obey the law. Alternate translation: “I will also put them in their hearts” or “I will enable them to obey my law” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### into...I will be...their...God (ULT)

### to...I will be...God (UST)

“I will be the God they worship”

### into...they will be my...people (ULT)

### to...they will be my...people (UST)

“they will be the people for whom I care”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [my people](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [people](#)
- [laws](#)
- [minds](#)
- [days](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> This is the [covenant](#) that I will make with the [house of Israel](#) after those [days](#) —says [the Lord](#). I will put my [laws](#) into their [minds](#), and I will write them on their [hearts](#). I will be their [God](#), and they will be [my people](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> This is the [agreement](#) that I will make with the [Israelites](#), [after the first agreement has ended](#),’ says [the Lord](#): ‘I will enable them to [understand](#) my [laws](#), and I will enable them to [truly](#) obey them. I will be their [God](#), and they will be [my people](#).’

- house

### Translation Words - UST

- my people
- the Lord
- God
- truly
- agreement
- Israelites
- people
- laws
- understand
- after the first agreement has ended
- Israelites

## Hebrews 8:11

### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah.

**They will...certainly not...teach each one his neighbor and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord (ULT) No one will need to teach a fellow citizen or tell his fellow kinsmen...acknowledge that the Lord is God... the...the (UST)**

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation.  
Alternate translation: "They will not need to teach their neighbors or brothers to know me" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**neighbor...brother (ULT)  
citizen...the...kinsmen...the (UST)**

Both of these refer to fellow Israelites. (See: [Doublet](#))

**Know the Lord...they will all know me (ULT)  
acknowledge that...Lord...the...all my people will acknowledge me (UST)**

"Know" here stands for acknowledge. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [brother](#)
- [They will...teach](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [Know](#)
- [they will...know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [kinsmen](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [citizen](#)
- [acknowledge](#)
- [will acknowledge](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [They will](#) certainly not [teach](#) each one his [neighbor](#) and each one his [brother](#), saying, '[Know](#) the [Lord](#).' For [they will](#) all [know](#) me, from the least of them to the greatest.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> No one will need [to teach](#) a fellow [citizen](#) or tell his fellow [kinsmen](#), 'You [acknowledge](#) that the [Lord](#) is God,' because all my people [will acknowledge](#) me. Everyone among my people, from the least important to the most important, will know me.

## Hebrews 8:12

**toward their evil deeds (ULT)**

**them...the wicked things they have done (UST)**

This stands for the people who committed these evil deeds.

Alternate translation: "to those who did evil deeds" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**their sins I will certainly not remember any longer (ULT)**

**I will no longer consider...they are guilty for...their... sins (UST)**

Here "remember" stands for "think about." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [evil deeds](#)
- [merciful](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they are guilty for...sins](#)
- [wicked things](#)
- [mercifully forgive](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> For I will be [merciful](#) toward their [evil deeds](#), and their [sins](#) I will certainly not remember any longer."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> I will [mercifully forgive](#) them for the [wicked things](#) they have done. I will no longer consider that [they are guilty for](#) their [sins](#)."



## Hebrews 8:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> By calling this covenant “new,” he has made the first covenant obsolete, and what has become obsolete and old will soon disappear.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> Since God said that he was making a new agreement, we know that he considered that the first agreement was old and no longer in use, decaying and that it would soon disappear.

## Hebrews 9

### Hebrews 9 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter describes how Jesus is better than the temple and all its laws and rules. This chapter will be difficult to understand if the first five books of the Old Testament have not yet been translated.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Will

A will is a legal document that describes what will happen to a person's property after he dies.

##### Blood

In the Old Testament, God had commanded the Israelites to offer sacrifices so that he would forgive their sins. Before they could offer these sacrifices, they had to kill animals and then offer not only the animal's body but also its blood. Shedding blood is a metaphor for killing an animal or person. Jesus offered his life, his blood, as a sacrifice when he allowed men to kill him. The writer of the Book of Hebrews is saying in this chapter that this sacrifice is better than the sacrifices of the Old Testament. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [covenant](#))

##### Return of Christ

Jesus will return to finish the work that he began when he died so that God would forgive his people's sins. He will finish saving those people who are waiting for him. (See: [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### First covenant

This refers to the covenant that God made with Moses. However, before he made this covenant, God had made a covenant with Abraham. But this was the first covenant that God had made with the people of Israel. You may decide to translate "the first covenant" as "the earlier covenant."

## Hebrews 9:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer makes clear to these Jewish believers that the laws and the tabernacle of the old covenant were only pictures of the better, new covenant.

### Now (ULT)

### According to the (UST)

This word marks a new part of the teaching.

### the first covenant (ULT)

### According to the...first agreement (UST)

See how you translated this in [Hebrews 8:7](#).

### had...regulations (ULT)

### According to the...God made rules for how the people of Israel should (UST)

“had detailed instructions” or “had rules”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [and an...sanctuary](#)
- [for worship](#)
- [regulations](#)
- [earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to...worship him](#)
- [worship...to](#)
- [God made rules for how the people of Israel should](#)
- [he told them...make a place](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now indeed the first covenant had [regulations for worship and an earthly sanctuary](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> According to the first agreement [God made rules for how the people of Israel should worship](#), and [he told them](#) to [make a place to worship him](#).

## Hebrews 9:2

### For (ULT)

#### The sanctuary that the Israelites set up (UST)

The author is continuing the discussion from [Hebrews 8:7](#).

#### a tabernacle...was prepared (ULT) was...sacred tent...The sanctuary that the Israelites set up (UST)

A tabernacle was constructed and made ready for use. This idea can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Israelites prepared a tabernacle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the presence

These objects are all accompanied by the definite article "the," because the author assumes that his readers already know about these things.

#### bread of the presence

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "presence" is expressed as the verb "display" or "present." Alternate translation: "bread on display before God" or "bread the priests presented to God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [was called](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [a tabernacle](#)
- [bread](#)
- [lampstand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [was called](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [was...sacred tent](#)
- [bread](#)
- [lampstand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> For [a tabernacle](#) was prepared. The first room, in which were the [lampstand](#), the table, and the [bread](#) of the presence, [was called the holy place](#).

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> The sanctuary that the Israelites set up was the [sacred tent](#). In its outer room there were the [lampstand](#) and the table on which they put the [bread](#) on display before God. That room [was called the holy place](#).

## Hebrews 9:3

### Behind...the second curtain (ULT)

### Behind...the curtain...another (UST)

The first curtain was the outer wall of the tabernacle, so the "second curtain" was the curtain between the "holy place" and the "most holy place."

### second (ULT)

### another (UST)

This is the ordinal word for number two. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [was called](#)
- [the holy of holies](#)
- [the holy of holies](#)
- [was another room](#)
- [curtain](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [That was called](#)
- [very holy place](#)
- [of the holy place](#)
- [on one side...there was...room](#)
- [curtain](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Behind the second [curtain was another room](#), which [was called the holy of holies](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Behind the [curtain on one side of the holy place there was another room](#). [That was called](#) the [very holy place](#).

## Hebrews 9:4

### Inside it was (ULT)

#### In it (UST)

“Inside the ark of the covenant”

**Aaron’s...rod...that budded (ULT)**  
**the...Aaron’s walking stick that had budded to prove**  
**that he was God’s true priest...the (UST)**

This was the rod Aaron had when God proved to the people of Israel that he had chosen Aaron as his priest by making Aaron’s rod bud. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**rod...that budded (ULT)**  
**the...that had budded to prove that he was God’s true**  
**priest (UST)**

“from which leaves and flowers had grown”

**of the covenant...the tablets (ULT)**  
**Agreement Chest...the stone tablets on which God had**  
**written (UST)**

Here “tablets” are flat pieces of stone that had writing on them. This refers to the stone tablets on which the ten commandments were written.

### Translation Words - ULT

- ark
- manna
- covenant
- covenant (2)
- Aaron’s
- a...altar for incense
- golden
- with gold
- golden
- rod

### Translation Words - UST

- Agreement Chest
- pieces of...food they called manna
- Agreement Chest
- Ten Commandments (2)
- Aaron’s
- an altar...for burning incense
- gold
- covered with...gold
- golden

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> It had a [golden altar for incense](#). It also had the [ark](#) of the [covenant](#), which was completely overlaid [with gold](#). Inside it was a [golden](#) jar holding the [manna](#), [Aaron’s rod](#) that budded, and the tablets of the [covenant](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> It had [an altar covered with gold for burning incense](#). It also had the [Agreement Chest](#). All its sides were covered with [gold](#). In it was the [golden](#) pot which contained [pieces of](#) the [food they called manna](#). In the chest there was also [Aaron’s walking stick](#) that had budded to prove that he was God’s true priest. In the chest were also the stone tablets on which God had written the [Ten Commandments](#).

- [walking stick](#)

## Hebrews 9:5

**glorious cherubim overshadowed the atonement lid (ULT)**

**the...were figures of winged creatures...symbolized God's glory. Their wings overshadowed the sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people (UST)**

When the Israelites were making the ark of the covenant, God commanded them to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant. Here they are spoken of as providing shade for the ark of the covenant. Alternate translation: "glorious cherubim covered the atonement lid with their wings"

**cherubim (ULT)**

**the...were figures of winged creatures (UST)**

Here "cherubim" means figures of two cherubim. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**about which it is not (ULT)**

**cannot now...about these things (UST)**

Even though the author uses the plural pronoun "we," he is most likely referring only to himself. Alternate translation: "which I cannot" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [atonement lid](#)
- [glorious](#)
- [cherubim](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people](#)
- [symbolized God's glory](#)
- [the...were figures of winged creatures](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Above the ark of the covenant, [glorious cherubim](#) overshadowed the [atonement lid](#), about which it is not now the time to speak in detail.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> On top of the chest [were figures of winged creatures](#) that [symbolized God's glory](#). Their wings overshadowed the [sacred chest's lid where the high priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the sins of the people](#). I cannot now write about these things in detail.



## Hebrews 9:6

**these things...After...were thus prepared (ULT)**

**these things...they have arranged...in this way (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After the priests prepared these things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [room of the tabernacle](#)
- [priests](#)
- [services](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the tent](#)
- [Jewish priests](#)
- [their tasks](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> After these things were thus prepared, the [priests](#) always entered into the outer [room of the tabernacle](#) to perform their [services](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> After they have arranged all these things in this way, the [Jewish priests](#) habitually go into the outer room of [the tent](#) to do [their tasks](#).

## Hebrews 9:7

### and not without blood (ULT)

### He always takes the blood (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "he always brought blood" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### blood (ULT)

### the blood (UST)

This is the blood of the bull and goat that the high priest had to sacrifice on the Day of Atonement.

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- high priest
- people's
- each year

### Translation Words - UST

- the blood
- high priest goes
- that...other Israelites have committed...the...sins
- year

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But only the [high priest](#) entered into the second room once [each year](#), and not without [blood](#) that he offered for himself and for the [people's](#) unintentional sins.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But into the inner room only the [high priest goes](#) once a [year](#). He always takes [the blood](#) of animals that they have slaughtered. He offers the blood to God for his own sins and for the sins that the [other Israelites have committed](#). This includes the sins they committed but they did not know they were committing [sins](#).

## Hebrews 9:8

**into the holy place (ULT)**  
**to enter...inner room, the...the...presence of God**  
**while...Jews (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the inner room of the tabernacle on earth or 2) God's presence in heaven.

**as long as the first tabernacle was still standing (ULT)**  
**while...outer room still existed. In a similar way, he did**  
**not reveal the way for ordinary people...the...offered**  
**sacrifices...old way (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "the outer room of the tabernacle was still standing" or 2) "the earthly tabernacle and the sacrificial system still existed." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [had...appeared](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [into the holy place](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God did...reveal](#)
- [very holy place](#)
- [to enter...inner room, the...the...presence of God while...Jews](#)
- [Holy Spirit...the...very holy place](#)
- [room](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The [Holy Spirit](#) showed that the way [into the holy place](#) had not yet [appeared](#) as long as the first [tabernacle](#) was still standing.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> By those things the [Holy Spirit](#) indicated that [God did](#) not [reveal](#) the way for ordinary people [to enter](#) into the [inner room, the very holy place](#), while the outer [room](#) still existed. In a similar way, he did not reveal the way for ordinary people to enter the [presence of God while](#) the [Jews](#) offered sacrifices in the old way.

## Hebrews 9:9

**This is a symbol (ULT)**

**This was a symbol (UST)**

“This was a picture” or “This was a symbol”

**for the present time**

“for now”

**are offered (ULT)**

**offered in...sacred tent (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the priests now offer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**that are not able to perfect the worshiper’s conscience (ULT)**

**the...cannot make a person always know right from wrong...always do right from our hearts...in a way that he pleases God (UST)**

The writer speaks of a person’s conscience as if it were an object that could be made better and better until it was without fault. A person’s conscience is his knowledge of right and wrong. It is also his awareness of whether or not he has done wrong. If he knows he has done wrong, we say that he feels guilty. Alternate translation: “are not able to make the worshiper free from guilt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**conscience...the worshiper’s (ULT)**

**make a person always know right from wrong...the...a way that he pleases God (UST)**

The writer appears to refer to only one worshiper, but he means all those who came to worship God at the tabernacle. (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts](#)
- [that are...able](#)
- [conscience](#)
- [time](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [to perfect](#)
- [worshiper’s](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gifts](#)
- [cannot](#)
- [make a person always know right from wrong](#)
- [time](#)
- [and sacrifices](#)
- [always do right from our hearts](#)
- [a way that he pleases God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> This is a symbol for the present [time](#), in which both [gifts](#) and [sacrifices](#) are offered [that are](#) not [able to perfect](#) the [worshiper’s conscience](#).

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> This was a symbol for the [time](#) in which we are now living. The [gifts and sacrifices](#) offered in the sacred tent [cannot make a person always know right from wrong](#) or [always do right from our hearts](#) and in [a way that he pleases God](#).

## Hebrews 9:10

**until the time of the new order (ULT)**  
**only until the time when God...a new agreement for us,**  
**by which he would restore everything in the right way**  
**(UST)**

“until God created the new order”

**of the new order (ULT)**  
**a new agreement for us, by which he would restore**  
**everything in the right way (UST)**

“new covenant”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the body](#)
- [the time](#)
- [regulations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [physical things](#)
- [the time when God](#)
- [all those rules were about...that applied](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> They are only concerned with food and drink and various ceremonial washings, [regulations for the body](#), imposed until [the time](#) of the new order.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Those rules about what to eat and drink, and about what to wash—all [those rules were about physical things that applied](#) only until [the time when God](#) would make a new agreement for us, by which he would restore everything in the right way.

## Hebrews 9:11

### Connecting Statement:

Having described the service of the tabernacle under God's law, the writer makes clear that Christ's service under the new covenant is better because it is sealed with his blood. It is better also because Christ has entered the true "tabernacle," that is, God's own presence in heaven, instead of entering, as other high priests, into the earthly tabernacle, which was only an imperfect copy.

### good things (ULT)

### good things that we have now (UST)

This does not refer to material things. It means the good things that God promised in his new covenant.

### the greater and more perfect tabernacle (ULT)

### the sacred tent...is...the tent...greater and completely perfect (UST)

This refers to the heavenly tent or tabernacle, which is more important and more perfect than the earthly tabernacle.

### that was not made by human hands (ULT)

### But it...unlike...Moses set up here on earth (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that humans hands did not make" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### that was...made by human hands (ULT)

### Moses set up here on earth (UST)

Here "hands" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "humans" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [good things](#)
- [a high priest](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [more perfect](#)
- [created world](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [good things that we have now](#)
- [as our high priest](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [the tent](#)
- [completely perfect](#)
- [made by human effort](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> But [Christ](#) came as [a high priest](#) of the [good things](#) that have come. He went through the greater and [more perfect tabernacle](#) that was not made by human hands, one not belonging to this [created world](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>11</sup> But when [the Messiah](#) came [as our high priest](#), he brought the [good things that we have now](#). Then he went into God's presence in heaven, which is like the sacred tent. But it is unlike [the tent](#) Moses set up here on earth, meaning it is greater and [completely perfect](#). It was not [made by human effort](#).

## Hebrews 9:12

### most holy place (ULT)

### very holy place (UST)

God's presence in heaven is spoken of as if it were the most holy place, the innermost room in the tabernacle. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [eternal](#)
- [most holy place](#)
- [redemption](#)
- [the blood](#)
- [blood](#) (2)
- [calves](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he paid the price for our sins forever](#)
- [very holy place](#)
- [he paid the price for our sins forever](#)
- [blood](#)
- [blood](#) (2)
- [calves' blood](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He entered into the [most holy place](#) once for all, not by [the blood](#) of goats and [calves](#), but by his own [blood](#), after securing [eternal redemption](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> When a high priest goes into the inner room in the tent each year, he takes goats' [blood](#) and [calves' blood](#) to offer as a sacrifice. But the Messiah did not do that. It was as though he went into that [very holy place](#) only once because he gave his own [blood](#) on the cross, just one time. By doing that, [he paid the price for our sins forever](#).

## Hebrews 9:13

**the sprinkling of a heifer's ashes on those who have become unclean (ULT)**

**The priests sprinkle on people...ashes of a red heifer that they have completely burned. By performing that ritual, they then say that God will now (UST)**

The priest would drop small amounts of the ashes on the unclean people.

**for the cleansing of their flesh (ULT)**

**the...that the people should worship him (UST)**

Here "flesh" refers to the entire body. Alternate translation: "for the cleansing of their bodies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- blood
- cleansing
- sets them apart to God
- of goats
- ashes
- on those who have become unclean

### Translation Words - UST

- people
- blood
- should worship him
- accept
- goats
- ashes of
- they then say that God will now

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> For if the [blood of goats](#) and bulls and the sprinkling of a heifer's [ashes on those who have become unclean sets them apart to God](#) for the [cleansing](#) of their [flesh](#),

### UST

<sup>13</sup> The priests sprinkle on people [goats' blood](#) and bulls' blood and the water that has been filtered through the [ashes of](#) a red heifer that they have completely burned. By performing that ritual, [they then say that God will now accept](#) that the [people should worship him](#).



## Hebrews 9:14

**how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse your conscience from dead works to serve the living God (ULT)**

**Since this is true, much more is accomplished by the blood of Messiah! Through the eternal Spirit he offered himself as a perfect sacrifice to God. His blood will purify our inner criticisms from useless rituals, so that we may serve the living God (UST)**

The author uses this question to emphasize that Christ's sacrifice was the most powerful. Alternate translation: "then certainly Christ's blood will cleanse our conscience even more from dead works to serve the living God! Because, through the eternal Spirit, he offered himself without blemish to God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**the blood of Christ (ULT)**

**the blood...Messiah (UST)**

The "blood" of Christ stands for his death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**without blemish (ULT)**

**perfect (UST)**

This is a small sin or moral fault spoken of here as if it were a small, unusual spot or defect on Christ's body. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**will...cleanse your conscience (ULT)**

**His blood will purify our inner criticisms (UST)**

Here "conscience" refers to a person's feeling of guilt. Believers no longer have to feel guilty for the sins they have committed because Jesus sacrificed himself and has forgiven them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**will...cleanse (ULT)**

**His blood will purify (UST)**

Here "cleanse" stands for the action of relieving our consciences from guilt for the sins we have committed. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**dead works (ULT)**

**useless rituals (UST)**

Sinful deeds are spoken of as if they belonged to the world of the dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [to God](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> how much more will the [blood of Christ](#), who through the [eternal Spirit](#) offered himself [without blemish to God](#), [cleanse](#) your <sup>[2]</sup> [conscience](#) from [dead works](#) to [serve](#) the [living God](#)?

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Since this is true, much more is accomplished by the [blood](#) of [Messiah](#)! Through the [eternal Spirit](#) he offered himself as a [perfect](#) sacrifice [to God](#). [His blood will purify](#) our [inner criticisms](#) from [useless rituals](#), so that [we may serve](#) the [living God](#).

- the...God (2)
- without blemish
- the...Spirit
- works
- will...cleanse
- blood
- conscience
- of Christ
- dead
- serve

### Translation Words - UST

- living
- eternal
- to God
- God (2)
- perfect
- Spirit
- rituals
- His blood will purify
- blood
- inner criticisms
- the...Messiah
- useless
- we may serve

## Hebrews 9:15

**For this reason (ULT)**

**Because...Messiah offered himself to God (UST)**

"As a result" or "Because of this"

**he is the mediator of a new covenant (ULT)**

**is able...a new agreement from God. Through (UST)**

This means Christ caused the new covenant between God and humans to exist.

**the first covenant (ULT)**

**the...first agreement (UST)**

See how you translated this in [Hebrews 8:7](#).

**those...to redeem...under the first covenant from their transgressions (ULT)**

**to...he paid the price to set people free from the sins they committed under the first agreement (UST)**

"to take away the sins of those who were under the first covenant." Possible meanings are 1) here "their sins" is a metonym for the guilt of their sins. Alternate translation: "to take away the guilt of those who were under the first covenant" or 2) here "their sins" is a metonym for the punishment for their sins. Alternate translation: "to take away the punishment for sins of those who were under the first covenant" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**who are called...those (ULT)**

**called to be his children (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God has chosen to be his children" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**inheritance (ULT)**

**an inheritance (UST)**

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- eternal
- who are called...those
- inheritance
- redeem
- of a...covenant
- covenant
- promise
- from their transgressions
- will receive
- the mediator

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> For this reason, he is [the mediator of a new covenant](#), so that those [who are called will receive](#) the [promise of the eternal inheritance](#), [since a death](#) has taken place to [redeem those](#) under the first [covenant from their transgressions](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Because Messiah offered himself to God, he [is able](#) to bring about a new [agreement from God](#). [Through his death he paid the price to set people free from](#) the [sins they committed](#) under the first [agreement](#). [He did this so that those who are called to be his children can be guaranteed an inheritance that will last forever](#).

- since a death

### Translation Words - UST

- that will last forever
- called to be his children
- an inheritance
- he paid the price to set people free from...they committed
- a...agreement from God
- agreement
- He did this so that those who are...can be guaranteed
- sins
- He did this so that those who are...can be guaranteed
- is able...Through
- his death

## Hebrews 9:16

**there is a will (ULT)**

**A covenant is like a will (UST)**

a legal document in which a person states who should receive his possessions when he himself dies

**the death of the person who made it must be proven (ULT)**

**someone must prove that the one who made it has died (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone must prove that the person who made the will has died"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [there is a will](#)
- [the death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [A covenant is like a will](#)
- [has died](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> For where [there is a will](#), [the death](#) of the person who made it must be proven.

### UST

<sup>16</sup> [A covenant is like a will](#). In the case of a will, in order to put its provisions into effect, someone must prove that the one who made it [has died](#).

## Hebrews 9:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- is...alive
- a will
- a death
- it has...force

### Translation Words - UST

- is still alive
- A will
- only when the one who makes the will has died
- it is...in effect

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For [a will](#) is only in force when there has been [a death](#), because [it has](#) no [force](#) while the one who made it is still [alive](#).

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [A will](#) goes into effect [only when the one who makes the will has died](#). Otherwise, [it is](#) not [in effect](#) when the one who made it [is still alive](#).

## Hebrews 9:18

**So not even the first covenant was established without blood (ULT)**

**And so God put the first covenant into effect only by means of animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them (UST)**

This can be stated in active and positive form. Alternate translation: "So God established even the first covenant with blood" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

**first covenant (ULT)**

**first covenant (UST)**

See how you translated this in [Hebrews 8:7](#).

**blood (ULT)**

**animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them (UST)**

The death of animals sacrificed to God is spoken of as if it were nothing but blood. Alternate translation: "the death of animals sacrificed to God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [was established](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them](#)
- [God put...into effect](#)

#### ULT

<sup>18</sup> So not even the first covenant [was established](#) without [blood](#).

#### UST

<sup>18</sup> And so [God put](#) the first covenant [into effect](#) only by means of [animals' blood that flowed when the priests sacrificed them](#).

## Hebrews 9:19

**he took the blood...with water...the scroll...sprinkled...all the people (ULT)**

**the...he took...blood...After...mixed with water...the...scroll...all...he sprinkled more of that blood on...the people (UST)**

The priest dipped the hyssop in the blood and the water and then shook the hyssop so drops of blood and water would fall on the scroll and on the people. Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. Here the scroll and the people's acceptability to God are renewed. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**hyssop (ULT)**

**a sprig of hyssop (UST)**

a woody shrub with flowers in summer, used in ceremonial sprinkling

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#)
- [Moses...law](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [calves](#)
- [goats](#)
- [people](#)
- [people](#)
- [water](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that God commanded](#)
- [Moses...laws that God gave him](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [calves](#)
- [goats](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [people](#)
- [mixed with water](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> For when [Moses](#) had spoken every [command](#) in the [law](#) to all the [people](#), he took the [blood](#) of the [calves](#) and the [goats](#), with [water](#), red wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the scroll itself and all the [people](#).

### UST

<sup>19</sup> After [Moses](#) had declared to all the [Israelites](#) everything [that God commanded](#) in the [laws that God gave him](#), he took [calves'](#) and [goats' blood mixed with water](#). He dipped into this blood scarlet wool that he tied around a sprig of hyssop. Then he sprinkled with some of the blood the scroll itself containing God's laws. Then he sprinkled more of that blood on all the [people](#).



## Hebrews 9:20

### the blood of the covenant (ULT)

### the blood...the covenant that (UST)

Here "blood" refers to the death of the animals sacrificed to carry out the covenant's requirements. Alternate translation: "the blood that brings into effect the covenant" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [has commanded](#)
- [God](#)
- [blood](#)
- [covenant](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [commanded that](#)
- [God](#)
- [blood](#)
- [covenant that](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then he said, "This is the [blood](#) of the [covenant](#) that [God has commanded](#) for you."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> He said to them, "This is the [blood](#) that brings into effect the [covenant that God commanded that](#) you obey."

## Hebrews 9:21

**he sprinkled (ULT)**

**he sprinkled (UST)**

“Moses sprinkled”

**he sprinkled (ULT)**

**he sprinkled (UST)**

Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 9:19](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

**on all the containers used in the service (ULT)**

**on every object that they used in working there (UST)**

A container is an object that can hold things. Here it may refer to any kind of utensil or tool. Alternate translation: “all the utensils used in the service”

**used in the service (ULT)**

**that...used in working there (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the priests used in their work” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the blood (ULT)**

**that blood (UST)**

Here the animal “blood” is talking about the animal’s death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [service](#)
- [blood](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [in the same manner](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [used in working there](#)
- [blood](#)
- [on...sacred tent](#)
- [Likewise](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then [in the same manner](#), he sprinkled the [blood](#) on the [tabernacle](#) and on all the containers used in the [service](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Likewise](#), he sprinkled that [blood](#) on the [sacred tent](#) and on every object that they [used in working there](#).

## Hebrews 9:22

**almost...everything is cleansed with blood (ULT)**  
**sprinkling blood that they cleansed almost everything...in (UST)**

Making something acceptable to God is spoken of as if it were cleansing that thing. This idea can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests use blood to cleanse almost everything" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness (ULT)**  
**If blood does not flow...when they sacrifice an animal, God does not forgive...sins of those people (UST)**

Here "shedding of blood" refers to something dying as a sacrifice to God. This double negative can mean that all forgiveness comes through the shedding of blood. Alternate translation: "Forgiveness only comes when something dies as a sacrifice" or "God only forgives when something dies as a sacrifice" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

**forgiveness (ULT)**  
**forgive...sins of those people (UST)**

You can state explicitly the implied meaning. Alternate translation: "forgiveness of the sins of the people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [forgiveness](#)
- [is cleansed](#)
- [blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God's laws](#)
- [forgive...sins of those people](#)
- [that they cleansed](#)
- [sprinkling blood](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> According to the [law](#), almost everything [is cleansed](#) with [blood](#), and without the shedding of blood there is no [forgiveness](#).

### UST

<sup>22</sup> It was by [sprinkling blood that they cleansed](#) almost everything. That was what was stated in [God's laws](#). If blood does not flow when they sacrifice an animal, God does not [forgive](#) the [sins of those people](#).

## Hebrews 9:23

### Connecting Statement:

The writer emphasizes that Christ (now in heaven interceding for us) had to die only once for sins and that he will return to earth a second time.

**indeed the copies of the things in the heavens should be cleansed with these (ULT)  
the priests to cleanse the things that symbolized what the Messiah does in heaven...has to cleanse (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the priests should use these animal sacrifices to cleanse what are copies of things that are in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**However, the heavenly things themselves had to be cleansed with much better sacrifices than these (ULT)  
by animal sacrifices...But God...the things in heaven by means of much better sacrifices than those (UST)**

That is, better than the sacrifices used to cleanse the earthly copies. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as for the heavenly things themselves, God had to cleanse them with much better sacrifices" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [heavenly things](#)
- [should be cleansed](#)
- [sacrifices](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [things in heaven](#)
- [has to cleanse](#)
- [sacrifices](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Therefore it was necessary that indeed the copies of the things in the [heavens should be cleansed](#) with these. However, the [heavenly things](#) themselves had to be cleansed with much better [sacrifices](#) than these.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So by animal sacrifices it was necessary for the priests to cleanse the things that symbolized what the Messiah does in [heaven](#). But God [has to cleanse](#) the [things in heaven](#) by means of much better [sacrifices](#) than those.

## Hebrews 9:24

### made with hands...the most holy place (ULT) humans made...very holy place (UST)

Here “with hands” means “by humans.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the most holy place, which humans made, and which” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### of the true one (ULT) the true very holy place (UST)

“of the true most holy place”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [the most holy place](#)
- [God's](#)
- [true one](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [in...presence](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [he entered heaven](#)
- [very holy place](#)
- [God's](#)
- [true very holy place](#)
- [The Messiah](#)
- [presence](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> For [Christ](#) did not enter into [the most holy place](#) made with hands, which is only a copy of the [true one](#). Instead he entered into [heaven](#) itself, to appear now in [God's presence](#) for us.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> [The Messiah](#) did not enter the [very holy place](#) that humans made, which only represented the [true very holy place](#). Instead, [he entered heaven](#) itself, in order to now be in [God's presence](#) to represent us.

## Hebrews 9:25

**He did not enter there (ULT)  
not (UST)**

“He did not enter heaven”

**year after year (ULT)  
once every year (UST)**

“every year” or “each year”

**with the blood of another (ULT)  
taking blood that is...his own...not...to (UST)**

This means with the blood of an animal victim, not with his own blood.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [most holy place](#)
- [the blood](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [year after year](#)
- [as does](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [very holy place](#)
- [taking blood](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [every year](#)
- [as a sacrifice...like that](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> He did not enter there in order to offer himself many times, [as does](#) the [high priest](#), who enters into the [most holy place year after year](#) with [the blood](#) of another.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> The [high priest](#) enters the [very holy place](#) once [every year](#), [taking blood](#) that is not his own, to offer it [as a sacrifice](#). But when the Messiah entered heaven, it was not in order to offer himself repeatedly [like that](#).

## Hebrews 9:26

### If that were so (ULT) since (UST)

"If he had to offer himself often"

**to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself (ULT)  
to...the...so that by sacrificing himself, God will forgive  
all our sins and will not condemn us any more (UST)**

Doing away with sin represents having God forgive it. Alternate translation: "to cause God to forgive sins by sacrificing himself" or "to sacrifice himself so that God can forgive sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [he has appeared](#)
- [sin](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [now](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [the foundation](#)
- [ages](#)
- [to suffer](#)
- [the foundation of the world](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah has appeared](#)
- [sins and will not condemn us any more](#)
- [the world](#)
- [But instead](#)
- [sacrificing](#)
- [the time when God created](#)
- [age](#)
- [suffer and shed his blood](#)
- [the time when God created the world](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> If that were so, he would have had [to suffer](#) many times since [the foundation of the world](#). But [now he has appeared](#) once at the end of the [ages](#) to do away with [sin](#) by the [sacrifice](#) of himself.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> If that were so, he would have needed to [suffer and shed his blood](#) repeatedly since [the time when God created the world](#). [But instead](#), in this final [age](#), the [Messiah has appeared](#) once so that by [sacrificing](#) himself, God will forgive all our [sins and will not condemn us any more](#) because we have sinned.

## Hebrews 9:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- is the judgment
- to die

### Translation Words - UST

- God will judge them for their sins
- die

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Just as men are appointed [to die](#) once, and after that [is the judgment](#),

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> All people must [die](#) once, and after that [God will judge them for their sins](#).



## Hebrews 9:28

### Christ was offered once (ULT) when the Messiah died, he offered...once (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Christ offered himself once" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to...the...bear...sins (ULT) up himself...the...to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment...the place of (UST)

The act of making us innocent rather than guilty for our sins is spoken of as if our sins were physical objects that Christ could carry away from us. Alternate translation: "so that God would forgive the sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the...sins (ULT) the...to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment...the place of (UST)

Here "sins" mean the guilt that people have before God because of the sins they committed. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the salvation](#)
- [sins](#)
- [sin](#) (2)
- [Christ](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [save us](#)
- [to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment...the place of](#)
- [for those...have sinned](#) (2)
- [when...Messiah](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> so also, [Christ](#) was offered once to bear the [sins](#) of many, and will appear a second time to those who are eagerly waiting for him, not to deal with [sin](#), but for [the salvation](#).

9:11 <sup>[1]</sup> Other versions read, *Christ came as a high priest of the good things that are to come*.

9:14 <sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts have *our* instead of *your*

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Likewise, [when](#) the [Messiah](#) died, he offered up himself once [to be a sacrifice, he accepted the punishment in the place of](#) the many people who were his. He will come to earth a second time, not in order to sacrifice himself again [for those](#) who [have sinned](#), but in order to [save us](#) who wait for him and expect him to come.

## Hebrews 10

### Hebrews 10 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, the writer finishes describing how Jesus' sacrifice was better than the sacrifices offered in the Temple. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#))

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 10:5-7, 15-17, 37-38, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God's judgment and reward

Holy living is important for Christians. God will hold people accountable for how they lived their Christian life. Even though there will not be eternal condemnation for Christians, ungodly actions do and will have consequences. In addition, faithful living will be rewarded. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#), [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#) and [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [reward](#), [prize](#), [deserve](#).)

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

##### “For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins”

The sacrifices themselves had no redeeming power. They were effective because they were a display of faith, which was credited to the person offering the sacrifice. It was ultimately the sacrifice of Jesus which then makes these sacrifices “take away sins.” (See: [redeem](#), [redeemer](#), [redemption](#) and [faith](#))

##### “The covenant that I will make”

It is unclear whether this prophecy was being fulfilled as the author was writing or whether it was to occur later. The translator should try to avoid making a claim about the time this covenant begins. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [covenant](#))

## Hebrews 10:1

### Connecting Statement:

The writer shows the weakness of the law and its sacrifices, why God gave the law, and the perfection of the new priesthood and Christ's sacrifice.

**only a shadow...the law has...of the good things to come (ULT)**

**a shadow...The...the good things that God will give us later...law...of (UST)**

This speaks about the law as if it were a shadow. The author means the law is not the good things that God had promised. It only hints at the good things that God is going to do. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of the...not the real forms...things themselves (ULT)**  
**law does not show very well the...that...The...is like... something...else (UST)**

"not the real things themselves"

**year after year (ULT)**

**every year (UST)**

"every year"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- can
- good things
- only a shadow
- year after year
- sacrifices
- be made perfect

### Translation Words - UST

- law
- can
- good things
- a shadow
- year
- sacrifices
- become perfect

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> For the [law](#) has [only a shadow](#) of the [good things](#) to come, not the real forms of those things themselves. Those who approach God [can](#) never [be made perfect](#) by the same [sacrifices](#) that the priests continually bring [year after year](#).

### UST

<sup>1</sup> The law does not show very well the [good things](#) that God will give us later. The [law](#) is like [a shadow](#) of something else. If people come to worship God by offering the same kinds of [sacrifices](#) every [year](#), they [can](#) never [become perfect](#).

## Hebrews 10:2

**would the sacrifices not have ceased to be offered (ULT)**

**they would certainly have stopped offering those sacrifices (UST)**

The author uses a question to state that the sacrifices were limited in their power. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they would have ceased offering those sacrifices." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**would the sacrifices...have ceased (ULT)**

**they would certainly have (UST)**

"stopped being"

**the worshipers...would have been cleansed (ULT)**

**who brought these sacrifices...Those who worship... would have been clean (UST)**

Here being cleansed represents no longer being guilty of sin. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sacrifices would have taken away their sin" or "God would have made them no longer guilty of sin" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**and would no longer have any consciousness of sin (ULT)**

**the...they would not feel that they were still guilty...from their sin...Their thoughts toward themselves would have been at peace (UST)**

"would no longer think that they are guilty of sin" or "would know that they are no longer guilty of sin"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of sin
- would have been cleansed
- any consciousness
- worshipers

### Translation Words - UST

- from their sin
- would have been clean
- Their thoughts toward themselves would have been at peace
- who brought these sacrifices

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Otherwise, would the sacrifices not have ceased to be offered? For the [worshipers would have been cleansed](#) one time and would no longer have [any consciousness of sin](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> If God had removed the guilt of those [who brought these sacrifices](#), they would not feel that they were still guilty. So they would certainly have stopped offering those sacrifices! Those who worship [would have been clean from their sin](#) once and for all. [Their thoughts toward themselves would have been at peace](#).

## Hebrews 10:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of sins
- year after year

### Translation Words - UST

- for their sins
- year

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> But with those sacrifices there is a reminder [of sins year after year](#).

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> But rather, the fact that they offer those sacrifices each [year](#) reminds them that they are still guilty [for their sins](#).

## Hebrews 10:4

**For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins (ULT)**

**So we know that even if we offer animals such as bulls or goats to God, even if he sees their blood flow, that will not stop us from being guilty (UST)**

Sins are spoken of as if they were objects that animal blood could sweep away as it flowed. Alternate translation: “For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to cause God to forgive sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the blood of bulls and goats (ULT)**

**such as bulls or goats...even if he sees their blood flow (UST)**

Here “blood” refers to these animals dying as sacrifices to God. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [the blood](#)
- [goats](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stop us from being guilty](#)
- [even if he sees their blood flow](#)
- [goats](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> For it is impossible for [the blood](#) of bulls and [goats](#) to take away [sins](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> So we know that even if we offer animals such as bulls or [goats](#) to God, [even if he sees their blood flow](#), that will not [stop us from being guilty](#).

## Hebrews 10:5

### General Information:

Christ's words when he was on earth were foretold in this quotation from a psalm of David.

**you did not desire (ULT)**  
**not...that you have wanted (UST)**

Here "you" is singular and refers to God. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**a body...you have prepared (ULT)**  
**a body to offer...you have prepared (UST)**

"you have made a body ready"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a body](#)
- [world](#)
- [you have prepared](#)
- [Sacrifices](#)
- [offerings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [a body to offer](#)
- [world](#)
- [you have prepared](#)
- [It is...sacrifices](#)
- [offerings](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Therefore when Christ came into the [world](#), he said, "[Sacrifices](#) and [offerings](#) you did not desire, but [a body you have prepared](#) for me;

### UST

<sup>5</sup> That is why, as the Messiah was coming into the [world](#), he said to his Father, "[It is](#) not [sacrifices](#) and [offerings](#) that you have wanted, but [you have prepared](#) for me [a body to offer](#)."

## Hebrews 10:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin offerings
- you did...take pleasure
- burnt offerings

### Translation Words - UST

- neither do other sacrifices
- pleased you...please you
- Animals...completely burn up when people offer them to you

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> with [burnt offerings](#) and [sin offerings](#) [you did](#) not [take pleasure](#).

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> [Animals](#) that [completely burn up when people offer them to you](#), these animals have not [pleased you](#), and [neither do other sacrifices please you](#).



## Hebrews 10:7

### Then I said (ULT)

### Because of this, I said (UST)

Here "I" refers to Christ.

### Translation Words - ULT

- O God
- your...will
- the scroll
- as it is written

### Translation Words - UST

- My God
- what you want me to do
- in...scriptures
- just as they have written

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then I said, 'See, here I am— [as it is written](#) about me in [the scroll](#)— to do your [will](#), [O God](#).'

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Because of this, I said, 'My God, listen! I have come here in order to do [what you want me to do](#), [just as they have written](#) about me in the [scriptures](#).'

## Hebrews 10:8

### General Information:

Though changing the wording slightly, the author repeats these quotations from a psalm of David for emphasis.

#### Sacrifices...offerings (ULT)

#### It is...sacrifices...offerings (UST)

See how you translated these words in [Hebrews 10:5](#).

#### whole burnt offerings...sin offerings (ULT) animals...the priests have completely burned up...for those who have sinned (UST)

See how you translated similar words in [Hebrews 10:6](#).

#### which...are offered (ULT)

#### even though those things were...offered (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that priests offer" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin offerings](#)
- [the law](#)
- [Sacrifices](#)
- [offerings](#)
- [did you take pleasure in them](#)
- [whole burnt offerings](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [those who have sinned](#)
- [the laws that God gave Moses](#)
- [It is...sacrifices](#)
- [offerings](#)
- [They have...pleased you](#)
- [animals...the priests have completely burned up](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When he said above, "[Sacrifices](#), and [offerings](#), and [whole burnt offerings](#), and [sin offerings](#) you did not desire. Nor [did you take pleasure in them](#)" (which are offered according to [the law](#)),

### UST

<sup>8</sup> First the Messiah said, "[It is](#) not [sacrifices](#) and [offerings](#) and [animals](#) that [the priests have completely burned up](#) and other offerings to atone for [those who have sinned](#) that you have really wanted. [They have](#) not [pleased you](#)." He said that even though those things were offered according to [the laws that God gave Moses](#)!

## Hebrews 10:9

**See (ULT)**

**Listen (UST)**

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice (ULT)**

**Thus God took away the first way of sacrificing for sin in order to establish the second way by sacrificing the Messiah (UST)**

The abstract noun “practice” here refers to a way of atoning for sins. Stopping doing it is spoken of as if it were an object that could be taken away. Starting the second way of atoning for sins is spoken of as establishing that practice. Alternate translation: “He stops people atoning for sins the first way in order to atone for sins the second way” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**the first practice...the second practice (ULT)**

**took away the first way of sacrificing for sin...the second way by sacrificing the Messiah (UST)**

The words “first” and “second” are ordinal numbers. Alternate translation: “old practice...the new practice” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- your...will

**Translation Words - UST**

- what...you...want me to do

**ULT**

<sup>9</sup> then he said, “See, here I am to do your [will](#).” He takes away the first practice in order to establish the second practice.

**UST**

<sup>9</sup> Then, concerning his offering himself as a sacrifice to atone for people’s sin, he said, “Listen! I have come here to do [what](#) you [want me to do](#)!” Thus God took away the first way of sacrificing for sin in order to establish the second way by sacrificing the Messiah.

## Hebrews 10:10

**we have been sanctified (ULT)**  
**God set us apart for himself (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has sanctified us” or “God has dedicated us to himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ (ULT)**  
**Jesus the Messiah...This happened when Jesus the Messiah offered his own body...as a sacrifice (UST)**

The abstract noun “offering” can be expressed with the verb “offer” or “sacrifice.” Alternate translation: “because Jesus Christ offered his body as a sacrifice” or “because Jesus Christ sacrificed his body” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus Christ](#)
- [body](#)
- [sanctified](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [his own body](#)
- [God set...apart for himself](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [offered...as a sacrifice](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> By that will, we have been [sanctified](#) through the [offering](#) of the [body of Jesus Christ](#) once for all.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Because [Jesus the Messiah](#) did what God wanted him to do, [God set](#) us [apart for himself](#). This happened when Jesus the Messiah [offered his own body](#) once [as a sacrifice](#) that he will never need to repeat.

## Hebrews 10:11

**day after day (ULT)**

**daily (UST)**

“day by day” or “every day”

**can never take away sins (ULT)**

**could never remove the guilt for anyone’s sins (UST)**

This speaks of “sins” as if they are an object that a person can take away. Alternate translation: “can never cause God to forgive sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [can](#)
- [and performs his service to God](#)
- [priest](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [day after day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [for anyone’s sins](#)
- [could](#)
- [in front of the altar, he performs rituals](#)
- [priest](#)
- [sacrifices](#)
- [daily](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> And indeed every [priest](#) stands [day after day and performs his service to God](#). He offers the same sacrifices again and again—[sacrifices](#) that [can](#) never take away [sins](#).

### UST

<sup>11</sup> As every [priest](#) stands [daily in front of the altar, he performs rituals](#) and offers the same kind of [sacrifices](#) that [could](#) never remove the guilt [for anyone’s sins](#).

## Hebrews 10:12

**he sat down at the right hand of God (ULT)**

**After that, he sat down to rule beside God in...place of highest honor (UST)**

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Hebrews 1:3](#). Alternate translation: "he sat down at the place of honor and authority beside God" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [sacrifice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [God](#)
- [to rule beside...place of highest honor](#)
- [a sacrifice...that...enough](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> But when Christ offered for all time one [sacrifice](#) for [sins](#), he sat down at [the right hand of God](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> But the Messiah offered [a sacrifice](#) for [sins](#) that will be [enough](#) forever, and he offered it only one time! After that, he sat down [to rule beside God](#) in the [place of highest honor](#).

## Hebrews 10:13

### until his enemies are made a stool for his feet (ULT) God to completely defeat all his enemies (UST)

The humiliation of Christ's enemies is spoken of as if they were made a place for him to rest his feet. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "until God humiliates Christ's enemies and they become like a stool for his feet" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [a stool](#)
- [enemies](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [defeat all](#)
- [enemies](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Since that time, he is waiting until his [enemies](#) are made [a stool](#) for his feet.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> From now on, he is waiting for God to completely [defeat all](#) his [enemies](#).

## Hebrews 10:14

**those who are being sanctified (ULT)**  
**those in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom God is sanctifying” or “those whom God has dedicated to himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [those who are being sanctified](#)
- [offering](#)
- [he has perfected](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity](#)
- [offering...as the sacrifice](#)
- [he perfected](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For by one [offering he has perfected](#) forever [those who are being sanctified](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> By [offering](#) himself once [as the sacrifice, he perfected](#) forever those [in whom God has worked his cleansing and purity](#).



## Hebrews 10:15

### General Information:

This is a quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [testifies](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [confirms...that is true](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> And the [Holy Spirit](#) also [testifies](#) to us.  
For first he said,

### UST

<sup>15</sup> The [Holy Spirit](#) also [confirms](#) to us  
that [that is true](#). First he says:

## Hebrews 10:16

**with them (ULT)**

**on behalf of my people (UST)**

“with my people”

**after those days (ULT)**

**When...time of the first...has finished...agreement on behalf of them (UST)**

“when the time of the first covenant with my people has finished”

**I will put my laws in their hearts (ULT)**

**them...my laws...I will cause...to obey (UST)**

Here “hearts” is a metonym for a person’s inner being. The phrase “put them in their hearts” is a metaphor for enabling people to obey the law. Alternate translation: “I will enable them to obey my laws” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [laws](#)
- [minds](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord](#)
- [obey](#)
- [agreement...a new](#)
- [laws](#)
- [understand](#)
- [time of...has finished](#)

### ULT

<sup>16</sup> “This is the [covenant](#) that I will make with them after those [days](#), says [the Lord](#). I will put my [laws](#) in their [hearts](#), and I will write them on their [minds](#).”

### UST

<sup>16</sup> “When the [time of](#) the first [agreement](#) on behalf of my people [has finished](#), I will make [a new](#) agreement on behalf of them. I will do this for them,” says [the Lord](#): “I will cause them to [understand](#) my [laws](#) and I will cause them to [obey](#) my laws.”

## Hebrews 10:17

### General Information:

This continues the quotation from the prophet Jeremiah in the Old Testament.

**Their sins and their lawless deeds I will remember no longer (ULT)**  
**them for their sins, and I will consider that they are no longer guilty for having sinned (UST)**

"I will no longer remember their sins and lawless deeds." or "I will no longer think about their sins and lawless deeds." This is the second part of the Holy Spirit's testimony ([Hebrews 10:15-16](#)). You can make this explicit in the translation by ending the quotation at the end of verse 16 and starting a new quotation here. Alternate translation: "Then next he said, 'Their sins and lawless deeds I will remember no longer.'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**Their sins and their lawless deeds (ULT)**  
**them for their sins, and...having sinned (UST)**

The words "sins" and "lawless deeds" mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the sin is. Alternate translation: "The things they did that were forbidden and how they broke the law" (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [lawless deeds](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [for...having sinned](#)

#### ULT

17 And then, "Their [sins](#) and their [lawless deeds](#) I will remember no longer."

#### UST

17 Then he said: "I will forgive them for their [sins](#), and I will consider that they are no longer guilty for [having sinned](#)."

## Hebrews 10:18

### Now (ULT)

### that (UST)

This is used to draw attention to the important point that follows. It does not mean “at this moment.”

### where...there is forgiveness (ULT)

### When God...has forgiven someone's sins (UST)

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “forgiveness” is expressed as the verb “forgive.” Alternate translation: “when God has forgiven these things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### there is no longer any sacrifice for sin (ULT)

### does not need to make any more offerings to make up for his sin (UST)

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “sacrifice” is expressed as the verb “make offerings.” Alternate translation: “people no longer need to make offerings for sin” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [there is forgiveness](#)
- [any sacrifice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [to make up...his sin](#)
- [has forgiven someone's sins](#)
- [offerings](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Now where [there is forgiveness](#) for these, there is no longer [any sacrifice](#) for [sin](#).

### UST

<sup>18</sup> When God [has forgiven someone's sins](#), that person does not need to make any more [offerings to make up](#) for [his sin](#)!

## Hebrews 10:19

### Connecting Statement:

Having made it clear that there is only one sacrifice for sin, the writer continues with the picture of the most holy place in the temple, where only the high priest could enter each year with the blood of the sacrifice for sins. He reminds the believers that they now worship God in his presence as if they were standing in the most holy place.

#### brothers (ULT)

#### my fellow believers (UST)

Here this means all believers in Christ whether male or female. Alternate translation: "brothers and sisters" or "fellow believers" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

#### the most holy place (ULT)

#### very holy place...the (UST)

This means the presence of God, not the most holy place in the old tabernacle. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### by the blood of Jesus (ULT)

#### what Jesus accomplished when his own blood flowed for us (UST)

Here "blood of Jesus" refers to the death of Jesus. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [most holy place](#)
- [blood](#)
- [confidence](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [what Jesus accomplished when his own](#)
- [my fellow believers](#)
- [very holy place](#)
- [blood flowed for us](#)
- [we can confidently go](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Therefore, [brothers](#), we have [confidence](#) to enter into the [most holy place](#) by the [blood of Jesus](#).

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> So, [my fellow believers](#), because we trust in [what Jesus accomplished when his own blood flowed for us](#), [we can confidently go](#) into God's very presence that was symbolized by the [very holy place](#) in the sacred tent.

## Hebrews 10:20

**the...way...living (ULT)**  
**to go into God's presence...way...we can live forever (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) this new way to God that Jesus has provided results in believers living forever or 2) Jesus is alive, and he is the way believers enter into the presence of God.

**through the curtain (ULT)**  
**by making...This new way (UST)**

The curtain in the earthly temple represents the separation between people and God's true presence. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**his flesh (ULT)**  
**Jesus, who died for us (UST)**

Here "flesh" stands for the body of Jesus, and his body stands for his sacrificial death. Alternate translation: "by means of his death" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [curtain](#)
- [that he has opened](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we can live forever](#)
- [Jesus, who died for us](#)
- [This new way](#)
- [He has enabled](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> That is the new and [living](#) way [that he has opened](#) for us through the [curtain](#), that is, his [flesh](#).

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [He has enabled](#) us to go into God's presence by making a new way in which [we can live forever](#). [This new way](#) is [Jesus, who died for us](#).

## Hebrews 10:21

**Because we have a great priest over the house of God (ULT)**

**The Messiah is a great priest who rules over us, we who are God's people (UST)**

This must be translated in such a way as to make it clear that Jesus is this "great priest."

**over the house (ULT)**

**who rules over us, we who are...people (UST)**

"in charge of the house"

**the house of God (ULT)**

**us, we who are God's people (UST)**

This speaks about God's people as if they were a literal house. Alternate translation: "all the people of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- house of God
- a...priest
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- God's
- us, we who are...God's...people
- priest
- us, we who are...people

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Because we have a great [priest](#) over the [house of God](#),

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> The Messiah is a great [priest](#) who rules over [us, we who are God's people](#).

## Hebrews 10:22

### let us approach (ULT)

### So we must approach God (UST)

Here “approach” stands for worshiping God, as a priest would go up to God’s altar to sacrifice animals to him. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### with true hearts (ULT)

### sincerely...It is he who has made our thinking clear...in (UST)

“with faithful hearts” or “with honest hearts.” Here “hearts” stands for the genuine will and motivation of the believers. Alternate translation: “with sincerity” or “sincerely” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### in the full assurance of faith (ULT)

### by confidently trusting in Jesus (UST)

“and with a confident faith” or “and trusting completely in Jesus”

### having our hearts sprinkled clean (ULT)

### It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our thinking...purified our desires, and as if he (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as if he had made our hearts clean with his blood” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### having our hearts sprinkled clean (ULT)

### It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over our thinking...purified our desires, and as if he (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for the conscience, the awareness of right and wrong. Being made clean is a metaphor for being forgiven and being given the status of righteousness. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### having...sprinkled clean (ULT)

### It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over...purified...as if he (UST)

Sprinkling was a symbolic action done by the priests by which they applied the benefits of the covenant to people and to objects. See how you translated this in [Hebrews 9:19](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### having our bodies washed with pure water (ULT)

### had washed our bodies...pure water (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as if he had washed our bodies in pure water” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> let us approach with [true hearts](#) in the full assurance [of faith](#), having our [hearts](#) sprinkled clean from an [evil conscience](#) and having our [bodies](#) washed with [pure water](#).

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> So we must approach God [sincerely](#) by confidently [trusting](#) in Jesus. [It is he who has made our thinking clear](#) after [having sinned](#). It is as if he sprinkled his own blood over [our thinking](#) and purified [our desires, and](#) as if he had washed [our bodies](#) in [pure water](#).



**having our bodies washed with pure water (ULT)**  
**had washed our bodies...pure water (UST)**

If the translator understands this phrase as referring to Christian baptism, then “water” is literal, not figurative. But if water is taken as literal, then “pure” is figurative, standing for the spiritual purity that baptism is said here to accomplish. The “washing” stands for the believer being made acceptable to God. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

**Translation Words - ULT**

- [hearts](#)
- [hearts](#) (2)
- [bodies](#)
- [true](#)
- [pure](#)
- [an...conscience](#)
- [of faith](#)
- [evil](#)
- [with...water](#)

**Translation Words - UST**

- [It is he who has made our thinking clear](#)
- [our thinking...our desires, and](#) (2)
- [our bodies](#)
- [sincerely](#)
- [pure](#)
- [having sinned](#)
- [trusting](#)
- [having sinned](#)
- [water](#)

## Hebrews 10:23

**Let us hold tightly to the confession of our hope (ULT)**  
**We must unwaveringly keep stating what we believe...**  
**we must...expect him to do these things (UST)**

Here “hold tightly” is a metaphor that refers to a person determining to do something and refusing to stop. The abstract nouns “confession” and “expectation” can be translated as verbs. Alternate translation: “Let us be determined to continue confessing the things that we confidently expect from God” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

**without wavering (ULT)**  
**confidently (UST)**

Being uncertain about something is spoken of as if he were wavering or leaning from side to side. Alternate translation: “without being unsure” or “without doubting” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [confession](#)
- [is faithful](#)
- [God, who has promised](#)
- [hope](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [stating what we believe](#)
- [God faithfully does](#)
- [all...promised to do](#)
- [we must...expect him to do these things](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Let us hold tightly to the [confession](#) of our [hope](#) without wavering, because [God, who has promised, is faithful](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> We must unwaveringly keep [stating what we believe](#). Since [God faithfully does all](#) he [promised to do, we must](#) confidently [expect him to do these things](#).

## Hebrews 10:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to love](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [good](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love](#)
- [deeds](#)
- [good](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> And let us consider how to motivate one another [to love](#) and [good deeds](#).

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> And let us think how each of us can best encourage each other to [love](#) one another and to do [good deeds](#).

## Hebrews 10:25

**Let us not stop meeting together (ULT)**  
**We must not cease assembling ourselves to worship the Lord (UST)**

You can make explicit that the people met to worship. Alternate translation: "Let us not stop coming together to worship" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**as you see the day coming closer (ULT)**  
**since we know that the time that the Lord will return is near (UST)**

A future time is spoken of as if it were an object coming closer to the speaker. Here "the day" refers to when Jesus will return. Alternate translation: "as you know that Christ will return soon" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [let us encourage one another](#)
- [as is](#)
- [day](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [each one of us must encourage the others](#)
- [as](#)
- [time that the Lord will return](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Let us not stop meeting together, [as is](#) the habit of some. Instead, [let us encourage one another](#), and even more so as you see the [day](#) coming closer.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> We must not cease assembling ourselves to worship the Lord, [as](#) some people have done. Instead, [each one of us must encourage the others](#). Let us do that all the more since we know that the [time that the Lord will return](#) is near.

## Hebrews 10:26

### Connecting Statement:

The writer now gives his fourth warning.

**if...deliberately...we...go on sinning (ULT)**

**If we deliberately and habitually...sin...we (UST)**

“we know we are sinning but we do it again and again”

**after we have received the knowledge of the truth (ULT)**

**after...have learned the true experience (UST)**

Knowledge of the truth is spoken of as if it were an object that could be given by one person to another. Alternate translation: “after we have learned the truth” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of the truth (ULT)**

**true experience (UST)**

The truth about God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**a sacrifice for sins no longer exists (ULT)**

**about the Messiah, no other sacrifice will help us (UST)**

No one is able to give a new sacrifice because Christ’s sacrifice is the only one that works. Alternate translation: “no one can offer a sacrifice for which God will forgive our sins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**for sins...a sacrifice (ULT)**

**about the Messiah...will help us...sacrifice (UST)**

Here “sacrifice for sins” stands for “an effective way to sacrifice animals to take away sins”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [go on sinning](#)
- [sins](#)
- [truth](#)
- [we have received](#)
- [a sacrifice](#)
- [knowledge](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#)
- [will help us](#)
- [true experience](#)
- [have learned](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [true experience](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> For if we deliberately [go on sinning](#) after [we have received](#) the [knowledge](#) of the [truth](#), [a sacrifice](#) for [sins](#) no longer exists.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> If we deliberately and habitually [sin](#) after we [have learned](#) the [true experience](#) about the Messiah, no other [sacrifice will help us](#).

## Hebrews 10:27

### of judgment (ULT)

### God will judge us (UST)

Of God's judgment, that is, that God will judge. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### a fury of fire that will consume God's enemies (ULT) will righteously punish all his enemies in a furious fire (UST)

God's fury is spoken of as if it were fire that would burn up his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- a fury
- of judgment
- enemies
- consume
- of fire

### Translation Words - UST

- furious
- God will judge us
- all his enemies
- righteously punish
- in a...fire

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Instead, there is only a certain fearful expectation [of judgment](#), and [a fury of fire](#) that will [consume](#) God's [enemies](#).

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Instead, we must fearfully expect that [God will judge us](#), and then he will [righteously punish all his enemies in a furious fire](#).

## Hebrews 10:28

**two or three witnesses (ULT)**

**at least two or three people testified against him (UST)**

It is implied that this means “of at least two or three witness.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the law of Moses
- witnesses
- mercy
- of Moses
- dies
- who has rejected

### Translation Words - UST

- the laws that God gave Moses
- testified against him
- mercy
- that God gave Moses
- had to die
- rejected

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Anyone [who has rejected the law of Moses dies](#) without [mercy](#) at the testimony of two or three [witnesses](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> Everyone who [rejected the laws that God gave Moses had to die](#) without [mercy](#) when at least two or three people [testified against him](#).

## Hebrews 10:29

**How much worse punishment do you think one deserves who...insulted...of grace (ULT)**  
**That is severe punishment...he is also God...who...then God will punish him very, very severely...the...if that person rejects...acted so kindly toward him (UST)**

The author is emphasizing the greatness of the punishment for those who reject Christ. Alternate translation: "This was severe punishment. But the punishment will be even greater for anyone... grace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**has trampled underfoot the Son of God (ULT)**  
**But...Messiah is God's Son...If anyone rejects the (UST)**

Disregarding Christ and scorning him are spoken of as if someone had walked on him. Alternate translation: "has rejected the Son of God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the Son of God (ULT)**  
**But...Messiah is God's Son...the (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

**considered the blood of the covenant...as profane (ULT)**  
**agreement that he has made...despises the...if that person rejects the blood (UST)**

This shows how the person has trampled the Son of God. Alternate translation: "by treating the blood of the covenant as unholy"

**the blood of the covenant (ULT)**  
**agreement that he has made...the...if that person rejects the blood (UST)**

Here "blood" stands for Christ's death, by which God established the new covenant. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**the blood...by which he was sanctified (ULT)**  
**the...if that person rejects...blood...blood that flowed from him...in exchange for which God forgave him (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the blood by which God sanctified him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the blood of the...Spirit...of grace (ULT)**  
**the...the...Spirit of God...acted so kindly toward him (UST)**

"the Spirit of God, who provides grace"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of grace
- deserves

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> How much worse [punishment](#) do you think one [deserves](#) who has trampled underfoot the [Son of God](#), and considered [the blood](#) of the [covenant](#)— by which [he was sanctified](#)— as profane, and insulted the [Spirit of grace](#)?

### UST

<sup>29</sup> That is [severe punishment](#). But the Messiah is [God's Son](#), and he is also God. If anyone rejects the [agreement that he has made](#) and despises the blood that flowed from him—[if that person rejects the blood in exchange for which God forgave him](#)—if that person rejects the [Spirit of God](#), who [acted so kindly toward him](#)—[then God will punish him](#) very, very [severely](#).



- of God
- Son of God
- Spirit
- the blood
- covenant
- he was sanctified
- punishment

### Translation Words - UST

- acted so kindly toward him
- severe punishment...severely
- God's
- God's Son
- Spirit of God
- if that person rejects...blood
- agreement that he has made
- exchange for which God forgave him
- then God will punish him

## Hebrews 10:30

### General Information:

The word “we” here refers to the writer and all believers. These two quotations come from the law that Moses gave in the Old Testament. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

**Vengeance is mine (ULT)**  
**right and power to give people what they deserve for**  
**having sinned belongs to me...will punish them (UST)**

Vengeance is spoken of as if it were an object that belongs to God, who has the right to do as he wishes with what he owns. God has the right to take vengeance on his enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**I will pay back (ULT)**  
**I...as they deserve (UST)**

God taking vengeance is spoken of as if he were paying back the harmful things that someone has done to others. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [will judge](#)
- [Vengeance](#)
- [we know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [will judge](#)
- [will punish them](#)
- [we know](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> For [we know](#) the one who said, “[Vengeance](#) is mine; I will pay back.” And again, “[The Lord will judge](#) his [people](#).”

### UST

<sup>30</sup> We can be sure of this, since [we know](#) that God said, “The right and power to give people what they deserve for having sinned belongs to me. I [will punish them](#) as they deserve.” And Moses wrote, “[The Lord will judge](#) his [people](#).”

## Hebrews 10:31

### to fall into the hands (ULT)

### the...seizes and punishes you (UST)

Receiving God's full punishment is spoken of as if the person falls into God's hands. Here "hands" refers to God's power to judge.

Alternate translation: "to receive God's full punishment" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [It is a fearful thing](#)
- [of the...God](#)
- [the hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who really lives](#)
- [It will be a terrible thing](#)
- [if...all-powerful God](#)
- [seizes and punishes you](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> [It is a fearful thing](#) to fall into [the hands of the living God](#)!

### UST

<sup>31</sup> [It will be a terrible thing if the all-powerful God who really lives seizes and punishes you](#)!

## Hebrews 10:32

**the former days (ULT)**

**the earlier times...the (UST)**

“the time in the past”

**after you were enlightened (ULT)**

**you first understood...truth about the Messiah (UST)**

Learning the truth is spoken of as if God shined a light on the person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “after you learned the truth about Christ” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**you endured a great struggle of suffering (ULT)**

**You endured much hardship...you suffered, you continued to trust God (UST)**

“how much suffering you had to endure”

### Translation Words - ULT

- you endured
- of suffering
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- You endured
- you suffered, you continued to trust God
- times

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> But remember the former [days](#), in which, after you were enlightened, [you endured](#) a great struggle [of suffering](#).

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> Remember the earlier [times](#) when you first understood the truth about the Messiah. [You endured](#) much hardship, and when [you suffered, you continued to trust God](#).

## Hebrews 10:33

**to...ridicule...you were publically exposed...and persecution (ULT)**  
**people insulted you...in public...at other times...they made you suffer (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People ridiculed you by insulting and persecuting you in public" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**partners with those...you became (ULT)**  
**At other times...with other believers...you suffered...in their hardships (UST)**

"you joined those"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to...ridicule](#)
- [persecution](#)
- [you were publically exposed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [people insulted you](#)
- [they made you suffer](#)
- [in public](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Sometimes [you were publically exposed](#) to both [ridicule](#) and [persecution](#), and other times you became partners with those who went through such suffering.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> At times [people insulted you in public](#); at other times [they made you suffer](#). At other times you suffered with other believers in their hardships.

## Hebrews 10:34

**a better and everlasting possession (ULT)  
forever, possessions that are much better than those  
that they took from you (UST)**

God's eternal blessings are spoken of as a "possession." (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- you had compassion
- you accepted
- possessions
- possession
- prisoners
- joy
- You knew that

### Translation Words - UST

- You not only were kind to
- but you...accepted it...when unbelievers
- possessions
- possessions that are much
- were in prison because they believed in
- joyfully
- You accepted it because you...knew very well that

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> For [you had compassion](#) on the [prisoners](#), and [you accepted](#) with [joy](#) the seizure of your [possessions](#). [You knew that](#) you yourselves had a better and everlasting [possession](#). <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>34</sup> [You not only were kind to](#) those who [were in prison because they believed in](#) the Messiah, [but you](#) also [accepted it joyfully when unbelievers](#) took away your [possessions](#). [You accepted it because you](#) yourselves [knew very well that](#) you had possessions in heaven forever, [possessions that are much](#) better than those that they took from you!

## Hebrews 10:35

### General Information:

In 10:37 is a quotation from the prophet Isaiah in the Old Testament.

**So do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward (ULT)**

**So do not become discouraged when they cause you to suffer, because if you continue to trust in God, he will greatly reward you (UST)**

A person no longer having confidence is spoken of as if the person were to throw confidence away, like a person would discard something worthless. The abstract noun "confidence" can be translated with the adjective "confident" or the adverb "confidently." Alternate translation: "do not stop being confident, because you will receive a great reward for being confident" or "do not stop confidently trusting in God, who will reward you greatly" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [reward](#)
- [confidence](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [reward you](#)
- [because if...continue to trust in God](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> So do not throw away your [confidence](#), which has a great [reward](#).

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> So do not become discouraged when they cause you to suffer, [because if](#) you [continue to trust in God](#), he will greatly [reward you](#).

## Hebrews 10:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God's
- God's...will
- promise
- you may receive
- of patience

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- what...God...wants you to do
- what he has promised
- he will give you
- patiently continue to trust in him

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> For you have need [of patience](#), so that [you may receive](#) the [promise](#), after you have done [God's will](#).

### UST

<sup>36</sup> You must [patiently continue to trust in him](#) in order that, because of your doing [what God wants you to do](#), [he will give you what he has promised](#).



## Hebrews 10:37

**For in a very little while (ULT)**

**A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said about the Messiah: "In just a short time (UST)**

You can make this explicit. Alternate translation: "As God said in the scriptures, 'For in a very little while'" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**in a very little while**

"very soon"

**ULT**

<sup>37</sup> "For in a very little while, the one who is coming will come and not delay.

**UST**

<sup>37</sup> A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said about the Messiah: "In just a short time the one I promised would come will surely come; he will not delay coming.

## Hebrews 10:38

### General Information:

In 10:38 the author quotes from the prophet Habakkuk, which directly follows the quotation from the prophet Isaiah in 10:37.

**one...my righteous...if he shrinks back...with him (ULT)**  
**those who belong to...me, who act righteously...If they are cowards...stop trusting in me...I will...be pleased with them (UST)**

These refer to any of God's people in general. Alternate translation: "My faithful people...If any one of them shrinks...with that person" or "My faithful people...If they shrink...with them" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

**one...my righteous...will...be pleased (ULT)**  
**those who belong to...me, who act righteously...I will...be pleased with them (UST)**

Here "My" and "I" refer to God.

**he shrinks back (ULT)**  
**they are cowards...stop trusting in me (UST)**

stops doing the good thing he is doing

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will live](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [soul](#)
- [faith](#)
- [will...be pleased](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [will continue to live](#)
- [who act righteously](#)
- [I will...be pleased with them](#)
- [trusting...me](#)
- [I will...be pleased with them](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> But my [righteous](#) one [will live](#) by [faith](#), and if he shrinks back, my [soul](#) will not [be pleased](#) with him."

### UST

<sup>38</sup> But those who belong to me, [who act righteously](#), [will continue to live trusting](#) in [me](#). If they are cowards and stop trusting in me, [I will](#) not [be pleased with them](#).

## Hebrews 10:39

### of those who shrink back to destruction (ULT) people who are cowards and cause God to destroy us (UST)

A person who loses courage and faith are spoken of as if he were stepping back in fear from something. And “destruction” is spoken of as if it were a destination. Alternate translation: “who stop trusting God, which will cause him to destroy us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to preserve the soul (ULT) so that he will save us forever (UST)

Living eternally with God is spoken of as if it were keeping one's soul. Here “soul” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “, which will result in us living with God forever” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [the soul](#)
- [of those who have faith](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [us](#)
- [we are people who trust in him](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But we are not of those who shrink back to destruction. Instead, we are [of those who have faith](#) to preserve [the soul](#).

10:34 <sup>[1]</sup> Some older versions have *For you had compassion on me in my chains* .

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> But we are not people who are cowards and cause God to destroy us. Instead, [we are people who trust in him](#), so that he will save [us](#) forever.

## **Hebrews 11**

### **Hebrews 11 General Notes**

#### **Structure**

The writer begins this chapter by telling what faith is. Then he gives many examples of people who had faith and how they lived.

#### **Important concepts in this chapter**

##### **Faith**

In both the old and new covenants, God required faith. Some people with faith performed miracles and were very powerful. Other people with faith suffered greatly.

## Hebrews 11:1

### Connecting Statement:

The author tells three things about faith in this brief introduction.

### Now (ULT) and (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here the author starts to explain the meaning of "faith."

**is...faith...being sure of the things hoped for (ULT)  
is when people trust God...Faith...they are sure they  
will receive the things they confidently expect him to  
give them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when we have faith, we are sure of the things we hope for" or "faith is what allows a person to confidently expect certain things"

**the things hoped for (ULT)  
they confidently expect him to give them (UST)**

Here this refers specifically to the sure promises of God, especially the certainty that all believers in Jesus will live with God forever in heaven.

**and certain of things that are not seen (ULT)  
Faith is when people are certain they will see those things happen, though, for now, those  
things cannot be seen (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that we still have not seen" or "that still have not happened" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)
- [the things hoped for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Faith](#)
- [they confidently expect him to give them](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now [faith](#) is being sure of [the things hoped for](#) and certain of things that are not seen.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> [Faith](#) is when people trust God and they are sure they will receive the things [they confidently expect him to give them](#). Faith is when people are certain they will see those things happen, though, for now, those things cannot be seen.

## Hebrews 11:2

**For because of this (ULT)**

**Because...trusted in God (UST)**

“Because they were certain about events that had not happened”

**the ancestors were approved (ULT)**

**our ancestors...he approved of them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God approved of our ancestors because they had faith” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the ancestors (ULT)**

**our ancestors (UST)**

The author is speaking to the Hebrews about Hebrew ancestors. Alternate translation: “our ancestors” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**ULT**

<sup>2</sup> For because of this the ancestors were approved.

**UST**

<sup>2</sup> Because our ancestors trusted in God, he approved of them.

## Hebrews 11:3

**the universe was created by God's command (ULT)  
God formed...universe by commanding that it exist (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God created the universe by commanding it to exist" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**what is visible was not made out of things that were visible**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not create what we see out of things that were visible"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [by...command](#)
- [God's](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [was created](#)
- [we understand that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [by commanding that it exist](#)
- [God](#)
- [Because we trust in God](#)
- [formed](#)
- [we understand that](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> [By faith we understand that](#) the universe [was created](#) by [God's command](#), so that what is visible was not made out of things that were visible.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Because we trust in God, we understand that God formed](#) the universe [by commanding that it exist](#). So the things we see were not made from things that already existed.

## Hebrews 11:4

### Connecting Statement:

The writer then gives many examples (mostly from Old Testament writings) of people who lived by faith even though they did not receive what God had promised while they lived on the earth.

**he was attested to be righteous (ULT)**  
**declared...Abel was righteous (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God declared him to be righteous" or "God declared that Abel was righteous" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he still speaks (ULT)**  
**we still learn from...about trusting God (UST)**

Reading the scriptures and learning about Abel's faith is spoken of as if Abel himself were still speaking. Alternate translation: "we still learn from what Abel did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#)
- [offerings](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [he was attested](#)
- [and...spoke well of him](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [Abel](#)
- [Cain](#)
- [even though he died](#)
- [a...sacrifice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Abel...righteous](#)
- [Abel sacrificed](#)
- [to God](#)
- [God](#)
- [declared](#)
- [God spoke well about...and](#)
- [Adam's son...trusted God](#)
- [Abel](#)
- [older brother Cain](#)
- [although Abel is dead](#)
- [offered to God](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> [By faith Abel](#) offered [God](#) a better [sacrifice](#) than [Cain](#), through which [he was attested](#) to be [righteous](#), and [God spoke well of him](#) because of his [offerings](#), and through faith he still speaks, [even though he died](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Because [Adam's son Abel trusted God](#), he sacrificed something better [to God](#) than what his [older brother Cain offered to God](#). So [God spoke well about](#) what [Abel sacrificed](#), and [God declared](#) that [Abel was righteous](#). And [although Abel is dead](#), we still learn from him about trusting God.



## Hebrews 11:5

**By faith Enoch was taken up so that he did not see death (ULT)**

**Because Enoch believed...God took him up to heaven. Enoch did not die (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It was by faith that Enoch did not die because God took him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**he...see death (ULT)**

**Enoch did not die (UST)**

This speaks of death as if it were an object that people can see. It means to experience death. Alternate translation: "die" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**before...he was taken up (ULT)**

**Before...took him away (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "before God took him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**it was testified that he had pleased God (ULT)**

**God...he testified that Enoch pleased him well (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "God said that Enoch had pleased him" or 2) "people said that Enoch pleased God." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [Enoch](#)
- [death](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Because...believed](#)
- [Enoch](#)
- [Enoch did not die](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> [By faith Enoch](#) was taken up so that he did not see [death](#). "He was not found, because [God](#) took him." For before he was taken up, it was testified that he had pleased [God](#).

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Because Enoch believed God](#), God took him up to heaven. [Enoch did not die](#), because God took him, but no one could find him. Before [God](#) took him away, he testified that Enoch pleased him well.

## Hebrews 11:6

### Now without faith (ULT) only if they trust him...that (UST)

Here “Now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### without...faith it is impossible to please him (ULT) only if...Now it is possible for people to please God... they trust him (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “a person can please God only if he has faith in God” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### the one who comes to God (ULT) anyone who wants to come to God (UST)

Wanting to worship God and belong to his people is spoken of as if the person is literally coming to God. Alternate translation: “that anyone who wants to belong to God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of those who seek...he is a rewarder (ULT) those who try to know...he rewards (UST)

“he rewards those”

### of those who seek him (ULT) those who try to know him (UST)

Those who learn about God and make an effort to obey him are spoken of as if they were seeking to find him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [believe](#)
- [faith](#)
- [of those who seek](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [first believe](#)
- [they trust him](#)
- [try to know](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Now without [faith](#) it is impossible to please him. For the one who comes to [God](#) must [believe](#) that he exists and that he is a rewarder [of those who seek](#) him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Now it is possible for people to please God only if [they trust him](#), because anyone who wants to come to [God](#) must [first believe](#) that God exists and that he rewards those who [try to know](#) him.

## Hebrews 11:7

### having been given a divine message (ULT)

### God warned Noah...he would send a flood, which (UST)

This can be stated in active form and in other terms. Alternate translation: "because God told him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### about things not yet seen (ULT)

### that...had never seen before...of the (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "about things no one had ever seen before" or "about events that had not happened yet" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the world (ULT)

### rest...people (UST)

Here "world" refers to the world's human population. Alternate translation: "the people living in the world at that time" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### of the...became an heir...righteousness (ULT)

### the...So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because (UST)

Noah is spoken of as if he were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. Alternate translation: "received from God the righteousness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### that is according to faith (ULT)

### In...Noah trusted him (UST)

"that God gives to those who have faith in him"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [save](#)
- [he condemned](#)
- [a ship](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [world](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [household](#)
- [an heir](#)
- [with godly reverence](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [save](#)
- [he showed...deserved...God to punish them](#)
- [a ship](#)

## ULT

<sup>7</sup> [By faith Noah](#), having been given a divine message about things not yet seen, [with godly reverence](#) built [a ship](#) to [save](#) his [household](#). By doing this, [he](#) [condemned](#) the [world](#) and became [an heir](#) of the [righteousness](#) that is according to [faith](#).

## UST

<sup>7</sup> God warned Noah that he would send a flood, which [Noah](#) had never seen before, and [Noah believed him](#). [He honored God](#) by building [a ship](#) to [save](#) his [family](#). In this way [he showed](#) that the [rest](#) of the [people deserved](#) for [God to punish them](#). [So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because Noah trusted him](#).

- So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because
- rest...people
- Noah...believed him
- Noah trusted him
- Noah
- family
- So Noah became a person whom God made right with himself, because
- He honored God

## Hebrews 11:8

### when he was called (ULT)

#### God called (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when God called him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### and went out to the place (ULT)

#### go to the land that (UST)

“left his home to go to the place”

### that he was going to receive as an inheritance (ULT)

#### to...he would give his descendants...him (UST)

The land that God promised to give Abraham’s descendants is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that Abraham was to receive. Alternate translation: “that God would give him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He went out (ULT)

#### left his country (UST)

“He left his home”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [when he was called](#)
- [an inheritance](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [to receive](#)
- [obeyed](#)
- [knowing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God called](#)
- [his descendants](#)
- [Because Abraham trusted](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [give](#)
- [he obeyed God](#)
- [he did...know](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [By faith Abraham](#), [when he was called](#), [obeyed](#) and went out to the place that he was going [to receive](#) as [an inheritance](#). He went out, not [knowing](#) where he was going.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> [God called Abraham](#) to go to the land that he would [give his descendants](#). [Because Abraham trusted](#) him, [he obeyed God](#) and left his country, even though [he did](#) not [know](#) where he was going.

## Hebrews 11:9

**he lived in the land of promise as a foreigner (ULT)**  
**he lived as though he were a foreigner...a land that God**  
**had promised to give (UST)**

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "promise" is expressed as the verb "promised." Alternate translation: "he lived as a foreigner in the land God had promised to him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**fellow heirs (ULT)**  
**his descendants...did also. God promised to give to**  
**Isaac and Jacob (UST)**

"heirs together." This speaks about Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob as if they were heirs that would receive an inheritance from their father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [By faith](#)
- [of promise](#)
- [promise](#) (2)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [tents](#)
- [as](#)
- [a foreigner](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Because Abraham trusted God](#)
- [God had promised...give](#)
- [he promised to give Abraham](#) (2)
- [and his son Isaac](#)
- [his grandson Jacob](#)
- [tents](#)
- [as though](#)
- [he were a foreigner](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> [By faith](#) he lived in the land [of promise as a foreigner](#). He lived in [tents](#) with [Isaac](#) and [Jacob](#), fellow heirs of the same [promise](#).

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [Because Abraham trusted God](#), he lived [as though he were a foreigner](#) in a land that [God had promised](#) to [give](#) his descendants. Abraham lived in [tents](#), [and his son Isaac](#) and [his grandson Jacob](#) did also. God promised to give to Isaac and Jacob the same things that [he promised to give Abraham](#).

## Hebrews 11:10

### the city having foundations (ULT) the permanent city (UST)

“the city that has foundations.” Having foundations indicates that the city is permanent. Alternate translation: “the eternal city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### whose architect and builder is God (ULT) that God himself would design and build (UST)

“which is designed and built by God” or “which God would design and build”

### architect (ULT) himself would design (UST)

a person who designs buildings and cities

### Translation Words - ULT

- [is God](#)
- [foundations](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [permanent](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For he was looking forward to the city having [foundations](#), whose architect and builder [is God](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Abraham was waiting to live in the [permanent](#) city that [God](#) himself would design and build.

## Hebrews 11:11

### General Information:

Many versions interpret this verse as referring to Sarah, and others interpret it as referring to Abraham.

**It was by faith, even though Sarah herself was barren, that Abraham received ability to father a child. This happened even though he was too old, since he considered**

Some versions interpret this verse as referring to Sarah. "By faith Sarah, herself also barren, received power to bear children even beyond the time of maturity, since she considered"

**By faith (ULT)**

**by faith (UST)**

The abstract noun "faith" can be expressed with the verb "believe."

Possible meanings are 1) it was by Abraham's faith. Alternate translation: "It was because Abraham believed God" or 2) it was by Sarah's faith. Alternate translation: "It was because Sarah believed God" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**received ability to conceive a child (ULT)**

**received the ability to bear a child (UST)**

"received ability to become a father" or "received ability to have a child"

**since she considered as faithful the one who had promised (ULT)**

**because...considered Yahweh to be faithful because he had made the promise to her that she would have a son (UST)**

"because he believed God, who had give the promise, to be faithful"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ability](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [as faithful](#)
- [the one who had promised](#)
- [Sarah](#)
- [received](#)
- [though she was too old](#)
- [a child](#)
- [conceive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the ability](#)
- [by faith](#)
- [to be](#)
- [because he had made...promise to her that she would have a son](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> [By faith](#), even [Sarah](#) herself [received ability](#) to [conceive a child](#), even [though she was too old](#), since she considered [as faithful the one who had promised](#).

[1]

### UST

<sup>11</sup> And even though [Sarah was unable to have children because of her old-age](#), [by faith](#) she [received the ability](#) to [bear a child](#), because [she](#) considered Yahweh [to be](#) faithful [because he had made the promise to her that she would have a son](#).



- Sarah
- received
- was unable to have children because of her old-age...she
- a child
- bear

## Hebrews 11:12

**were born descendants...as many as the stars in the sky in number, and as countless as sand by the shore of the sea (ULT)**

**people descended who are...that...as many in number as the stars in the sky and are as countless as the grains of sand along the shore, just like God promised him (UST)**

This simile means Abraham had very many descendants. (See: [Simile](#))

### as countless as sand by the seashore

This means that just as there are so many grains of sand on the seashore that no one can count them all, Abraham had so many descendants that no one can count them all.

### Translation Words - ULT

- sky
- was almost dead
- as many as
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- in...sky
- Abraham was too old to have children
- as many...as
- just like God promised him

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Therefore, also from this one man—and he [was almost dead](#)—were born descendants [as many as](#) the stars in the [sky](#) in number, and as countless [as](#) sand by the shore of the sea.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So, although [Abraham was too old to have children](#), from that one man people descended who are [as many](#) in number [as](#) the stars in the [sky](#) and are as countless as the grains of sand along the shore, [just like God promised him](#).

## Hebrews 11:13

**without receiving the promises (ULT)**  
**they had not yet received the things that God had promised to give them (UST)**

This speaks of promises as if they are objects that a person receives. Alternate translation: “without receiving what God had promised them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**seeing and greeting them from far off (ULT)**  
**it was as though they had seen those things... distance...they were glad (UST)**

Future promised events are spoken of as if they were travelers arriving from far away. Alternate translation: “after learning what God will do in the future” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**admitting (ULT)**  
**It was as though they had admitted...that (UST)**

“they acknowledged” or “they accepted”

**they were foreigners and exiles on the earth (ULT)**  
**in the...they did not belong to this earth, but...they were only here temporarily (UST)**

Here “foreigners” and “exiles” mean basically the same thing. This emphasizes that this earth was not their true home. They were waiting for their true home that God would make for them. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [admitting](#)
- [faith](#)
- [promises](#)
- [receiving](#)
- [died](#)
- [earth](#)
- [exiles](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [It was as though they had admitted...that](#)
- [trusted](#)
- [things that God had promised to give them](#)
- [they had...received](#)
- [died](#)
- [earth](#)
- [they...only here temporarily](#)

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> In [faith](#) all these [died](#) without [receiving](#) the [promises](#), but instead seeing and greeting them from far off, and [admitting](#) that they were foreigners and [exiles](#) on the [earth](#).

### UST

<sup>13</sup> While they still [trusted](#) in God, all these people [died](#). Even though [they had](#) not yet [received](#) the [things that God had promised to give them](#), it was as though they had seen those things in the distance, and they were glad. [It was as though they had admitted](#) that they did not belong to this [earth](#), but [that they were only here temporarily](#).

## Hebrews 11:14

**a homeland (ULT)**

**will become their true native land (UST)**

“a country for them to belong to”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they are seeking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [they...long for](#)

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For those who say such things make it clear that [they are seeking](#) a homeland.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> As for people who say such things, [they](#) clearly show that they [long for](#) a place that will become their true native land.

## Hebrews 11:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- opportunity
- to return

### Translation Words - UST

- they could have
- simply returned there

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> If indeed they had been thinking of that country from which they had gone out, they would have had [opportunity to return](#).

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> If they had been thinking that their true native land was the place from which they had come, [they could have simply returned there](#).

## Hebrews 11:16

**a heavenly one (ULT)**

**desired a home in heaven (UST)**

“heavenly country” or “country in heaven”

**God is not ashamed to be called their God (ULT)**

**God...them...pleased for them to say that he is their God (UST)**

This can be expressed in active and positive form. Alternate translation: “God is happy to have them call him their God” or “God is proud to have them say that he is their God” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a heavenly one](#)
- [to be called](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [is...ashamed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [desired a home in heaven](#)
- [to say that he is](#)
- [God](#)
- [God \(2\)](#)
- [them...pleased for](#)

### ULT

**16** But as it is, they desire a better country, that is, [a heavenly one](#). Therefore [God](#) is not [ashamed to be called](#) their [God](#), since he has prepared a city for them.

### UST

**16** But, instead, they desired a better place in which to live. They [desired a home in heaven](#). So [God](#) has prepared a city for [them](#) to live with him, and he is [pleased for](#) them [to say that he is](#) their [God](#).

## Hebrews 11:17

### when he was tested (ULT)

### when God tested him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when God tested him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- By faith
- when he was tested
- promises
- Abraham
- Isaac
- who had received

#### Translation Words - UST

- Because...trusted God
- when God tested him
- Abraham, to whom God promised to give a son
- Abraham
- Isaac
- he had given him

#### ULT

<sup>17</sup> [By faith Abraham, when he was tested](#), offered [Isaac](#). Even he [who had received](#) the [promises](#) offered up his only begotten son.

#### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Because Abraham trusted God](#), he was ready to kill his son [Isaac](#) as a sacrifice [when God tested him](#). [Abraham, to whom God promised to give a son](#), was going to sacrifice the very son whom [he had given him](#), the only son whom his own wife had borne!

## Hebrews 11:18

**To him it had been said (ULT)**

**It was about this son...God had said (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to whom God said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**your descendants will be named (ULT)**

**that I will consider your family to descend (UST)**

Here "named" means assigned or designated. This sentence can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that I will designate your descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#)) (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [will be named](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [descendants](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that I will consider](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [family to descend](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> To him it had been said, "Through [Isaac](#) your [descendants will be named](#)."

### UST

<sup>18</sup> It was about this son that God had said, "It is only from [Isaac that I will consider](#) your [family to descend](#)."



## Hebrews 11:19

### God was able to raise up Isaac...from the dead (ULT)

"God was able to cause Isaac to live again"

### to raise up Isaac...from the dead (ULT)

In this verse, "to raise up" is to make alive again. The words "from the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld.

### figuratively speaking (ULT)

### if...it was as though (UST)

"in a manner of speaking." This means that what the author says next is not to be understood literally. God did not bring Isaac back from death literally. But because Abraham was about to sacrifice Isaac when God stopped him, it was as if God brought him back from the dead.

### him...from there (ULT)

### result was that...him (UST)

"it was from the dead"

### him...he received...back (ULT)

### him...did receive (UST)

"Abraham received Isaac back"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- was able
- he received...back
- the dead
- to raise up Isaac

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- could
- did receive
- died
- make Isaac live again

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Abraham reasoned that [God was able to raise up Isaac](#) even from [the dead](#), and figuratively speaking, [he received](#) him [back](#) from there.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Abraham considered that to fulfill that promise, God [could make Isaac live again](#) even if he [died](#) after Abraham had sacrificed him! The result was that when Abraham [did receive](#) Isaac back after [God](#) told him not to harm Isaac, it was as though he received him back even after he died.

## Hebrews 11:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- blessed
- By faith
- Isaac
- Esau
- Jacob

### Translation Words - UST

- he prayed...God...bless
- Because...trusted God
- Isaac
- Esau after he died
- Jacob

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> [By faith](#) also, about things to come, [Isaac blessed Jacob](#) and [Esau](#).

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Because Isaac trusted God, he prayed](#) that [God](#) would [bless](#) his sons [Jacob](#) and [Esau after he died](#).

## Hebrews 11:21

**Jacob...worshiped (ULT)**

**Jacob...He worshiped God (UST)**

"Jacob worshiped God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed](#)
- [sons](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [of Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [when he was dying](#)
- [of...staff](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [he prayed God would bless](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [He worshiped God](#)
- [Because...trusted God](#)
- [his own son Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [as he was dying](#)
- [walking stick before he died](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> [By faith Jacob](#), [when he was dying](#), [blessed](#) each of the [sons of Joseph](#), and [worshiped](#), leaning on the top of his [staff](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> [Because Jacob trusted God](#), [as he was dying](#), [he prayed God would bless](#) each of the [sons of his own son Joseph](#). [He worshiped God](#) as he leaned upon his [walking stick before he died](#).

## Hebrews 11:22

**when his end was near (ULT)**

**when he was...to die in Egypt, he thought ahead to (UST)**

Here "his end" is a polite way of referring to death. Alternate translation: "when he was about to die" (See: [Euphemism](#))

**spoke of the departure of the sons of Israel from Egypt (ULT)**

**about...the time when the Israelites would leave Egypt, and he instructed his people to carry (UST)**

"spoke of when the children of Israel would leave Egypt"

**of the sons of Israel (ULT)**

**the time when the Israelites (UST)**

"the Israelites" or "the descendants of Israel"

**instructed them about his bones (ULT)**

**and he instructed his people to carry...his bones with them when they left Egypt (UST)**

Joseph died while in Egypt. He wanted his people to take his bones with them when they left Egypt so they could bury his bones in the land that God promised them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [instructed them](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israelites](#)
- [Israelites](#)
- [Because...trusted God](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [with them when they left Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> [By faith Joseph](#), when his end was near, spoke of the departure of the [sons of Israel](#) from Egypt and [instructed them](#) about his bones.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [Because Joseph trusted God](#), when he was about to die in Egypt, he thought ahead to the time when the [Israelites](#) would leave Egypt, and he instructed his people to carry his bones [with them when they left Egypt](#).

## Hebrews 11:23

**Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents (ULT)**

**Moses' father...mother...they hid their son for three months shortly after he was born...the (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses' parents hid him for three months after he was born" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [they were...afraid](#)
- [command](#)
- [a...child](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [parents](#)
- [king](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [They were...afraid of disobeying](#)
- [what...had commanded](#)
- [child](#)
- [Because...trusted God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [father...mother](#)
- [king of Egypt](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> [By faith Moses](#), when he was born, was hidden for three months by his [parents](#) because they saw he was a beautiful [child](#), and [they were](#) not [afraid](#) of the [command](#) of the [king](#).

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [Because Moses' father](#) and [mother trusted God](#), they hid their son for three months shortly after he was born, because they saw that the [child](#) was beautiful. [They were](#) not [afraid of disobeying what](#) the [king of Egypt had commanded](#), that all the Jewish male babies must die.

## Hebrews 11:24

**after he had grown up (ULT)**

**The daughter of the king, whom they called Pharaoh, raised...but when Moses had grown up (UST)**

"had become an adult"

**refused to be called (ULT)**

**he refused to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "refused to allow people to call him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to be called
- the son
- By faith
- Moses
- Pharaoh's

### Translation Words - UST

- to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the
- son of
- because he trusted God
- Moses
- Pharaoh's

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> [By faith Moses](#), after he had grown up, refused [to be called the son](#) of [Pharaoh's](#) daughter.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> The daughter of the king, whom they called Pharaoh, raised [Moses](#), but when Moses had grown up, [because he trusted God](#), he refused [to accept the royal privileges that would have been his if people considered him as "the son of Pharaoh's](#) daughter."

## Hebrews 11:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- people of God
- of sin
- of God
- he chose
- people
- to suffer with

### Translation Words - UST

- God's...people
- living sinfully
- God's
- He decided
- people
- for others to mistreat him...along with

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Instead, he chose to suffer with the people of God, rather than to enjoy the temporary pleasures of sin.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> He decided that it was better for others to mistreat him for a time along with God's people, than to temporarily enjoy living sinfully in the king's palace.

## Hebrews 11:26

### the reproach for the sake of Christ (ULT) if he suffered...the Messiah (UST)

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “disgrace” is expressed as the verb “disrespect.” Alternate translation: “the experience of people disrespecting him because he did what Christ would want” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### for the sake of Christ (ULT) the Messiah (UST)

Obedying Christ is spoken of as if it were following him down a path. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he was fixing his eyes...on his reward (ULT) He looked forward...to the time when God would give him an eternal reward (UST)

Fully concentrating on achieving a goal is spoken of as if a person were staring at an object and refusing to look away. Alternate translation: “doing what he knew would earn him a reward in heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [for the sake of Christ](#)
- [Egypt's](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [reward](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the Messiah](#)
- [of Egypt that he would receive as one of Pharaoh's family](#)
- [if he suffered](#)
- [time when God would give him an eternal reward](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> He reasoned that the [reproach for the sake of Christ](#) was greater riches than [Egypt's](#) treasures. For he was fixing his eyes on his [reward](#).

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> He decided that [if he suffered](#) for [the Messiah](#), it would be worth far more in God's sight than owning the treasures [of Egypt that he would receive as one of Pharaoh's family](#). He looked forward to the [time when God would give him an eternal reward](#).



## Hebrews 11:27

**the one...he endured as if he were seeing...who is invisible (ULT)**

Moses is spoken of as if he saw God, who is invisible. (See: [Simile](#))

**the...who is invisible (ULT)  
would be angry...no one can see (UST)**

“the one no one can see”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [He...fear](#)
- [By faith](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [he endured](#)
- [king's](#)
- [as if](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [afraid](#)
- [trusted God](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [kept going](#)
- [king](#)
- [as](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> [By faith](#) Moses left [Egypt](#). [He](#) did not [fear](#) the [king's](#) anger, for [he endured as if](#) he were seeing the one who is invisible.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> Because he [trusted God](#), Moses left [Egypt](#). He was not [afraid](#) that the [king](#) would be angry because he left. He [kept going](#) because it was [as](#) though he kept seeing God, whom no one can see.

## Hebrews 11:28

**he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of the blood (ULT)**

**he obeyed God's commands about Passover, which became a yearly festival. He commanded the people to kill lambs and sprinkle their blood on...doorposts...the (UST)**

This was the first Passover. Moses kept it by obeying God's commands concerning the Passover and by commanding the people to obey them every year. Alternate translation: "he commanded the people to obey God's commands concerning the Passover and to sprinkle blood on their doors" or "he established the Passover and the sprinkling of blood"

**the sprinkling of the blood (ULT)**

**the people...sprinkle their blood on...doorposts (UST)**

This refers to God's command to the Israelites to kill a lamb and spread its blood on the doorposts of every house where Israelites lived. This would prevent the destroyer from harming their firstborn sons. This was one of the Passover commands. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**not...should...touch (ULT)**

**not...would...kill (UST)**

Here "touch" refers to harming or to killing someone. Alternate translation: "would not harm" or "would not kill" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Passover
- By faith
- destroyer
- firstborn

### Translation Words - UST

- their blood on...doorposts
- Passover, which became a yearly festival
- Because Moses believed God would save his own people
- angel who causes people to die
- oldest male Israelites with

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> [By faith](#) he kept the [Passover](#) and the sprinkling of the [blood](#), so that the [destroyer](#) of the [firstborn](#) should not touch them.

### UST

<sup>28</sup> [Because Moses believed God would save his own people](#), he obeyed God's commands about [Passover, which became a yearly festival](#). He commanded the people to kill lambs and sprinkle [their blood on](#) their [doorposts](#) so that the [angel who causes people to die](#) would not kill the [oldest male Israelites with](#) the oldest sons in each Egyptian family.

## Hebrews 11:29

### General Information:

Here the first word “they” refers to the Israelites, the second “they” refers to the Egyptians, the third “they” refers to the walls of Jericho.

**they passed through the Sea of Reeds (ULT)**  
**when they walked through the Sea of Reeds (UST)**

“the Israelites passed through the Sea of Reeds”

**they were swallowed up (ULT)**  
**they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the water swallowed up the Egyptians” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**they were swallowed up (ULT)**  
**they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them (UST)**

The water is spoken of as if it were an animal. Alternate translation: “the Egyptians drowned in the water” (See: [Personification](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [By faith](#)
- [Sea of Reeds](#)
- [Egyptians](#)
- [to do](#)
- [of Reeds](#)
- [as if](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Because the Israelites trusted God](#)
- [Sea of Reeds](#)
- [army of Egypt](#)
- [to cross where the sea had been](#)
- [Reeds](#)
- [it was as though](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> [By faith](#) they passed through the [Sea of Reeds as if](#) over dry land. When the [Egyptians](#) tried [to do](#) this, they were swallowed up.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> [Because the Israelites trusted God](#) when they walked through the [Sea of Reeds](#), [it was as though](#) they were walking on dry land! But, when the [army of Egypt](#) also attempted [to cross where the sea had been](#), they drowned, because the sea came back and flooded them!

## Hebrews 11:30

**after they had been circled around for seven days (ULT)**  
**marched around the walls for seven days (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Israelites had marched around them for seven days” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**seven days (ULT)**

**seven days (UST)**

“7 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [By faith](#)
- [of Jericho](#)
- [days](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Because the Israelite people trusted God](#)
- [the city of Jericho](#)
- [days](#)

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> [By faith](#) the walls [of Jericho](#) fell down, after they had been circled around for seven [days](#).

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> [Because the Israelite people trusted God](#), the walls around [the city of Jericho](#) collapsed, after the Israelites marched around the walls for seven [days](#).

## Hebrews 11:31

**because she had received the spies in peace (ULT)  
into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved  
Rahab because she welcomed those spies peacefully  
(UST)**

“had peacefully received the spies”

### Translation Words - ULT

- die
- By faith
- Rahab
- because she had received
- with those who were disobedient
- prostitute
- peace

### Translation Words - UST

- she did...perish with
- but because she trusted God
- Rahab
- into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved Rahab because she welcomed
- those inside Jericho who disobeyed God. Joshua had sent spies
- was a prostitute
- peacefully

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> By faith Rahab the prostitute did not die with those who were disobedient, because she had received the spies in peace.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Rahab was a prostitute, but because she trusted God, she did not perish with those inside Jericho who disobeyed God. Joshua had sent spies into the city to find ways to destroy it, but God saved Rahab because she welcomed those spies peacefully.

## Hebrews 11:32

### Connecting Statement:

The writer continues to speak of what God did for the ancestors of the people of Israel.

**What...more can I say (ULT)**  
**what more I should say about others who trusted in God (UST)**

The author uses a question to emphasize that there are many examples that he could have quoted. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "And there are many more examples." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**will fail...me...the time (ULT)**  
**It would take too much...to tell...time (UST)**

"I will not have enough time"

**Barak (ULT)**  
**Barak (UST)**

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [David](#)
- [Gideon](#)
- [Samson](#)
- [Jephthah](#)
- [time](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [other prophets](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [David](#)
- [Gideon](#)
- [Samson](#)
- [Jephthah](#)
- [time](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> What more can I say? For the [time](#) will fail me if I tell about [Gideon](#), Barak, [Samson](#), [Jephthah](#), [David](#), and also [Samuel](#) and the [prophets](#).

### UST

<sup>32</sup> I do not know what more I should say about others who trusted in God. It would take too much [time](#) to tell about [Gideon](#), Barak, [Samson](#), [Jephthah](#), [David](#), [Samuel](#), and the [other prophets](#).

## Hebrews 11:33

### Through faith they (ULT)

### Because they trusted God, some of them did great deeds for him (UST)

Here “they” does not mean that each person listed in 11:32 did all the things the author is about to mention. The author means in general these are the kinds of things that those with faith were able to do.

Alternate translation: “It was through faith that men like these”

### they...conquered kingdoms (ULT)

### some of them did great deeds for him...Some conquered lands ruled by powerful men (UST)

Here “kingdoms” refers to the people who lived there. Alternate translation: “they defeated the people of foreign kingdoms”

### They stopped the mouths of lions (ULT)

### Some forced lions to keep their mouths shut (UST)

These words begin a list of some of the ways God saved believers from death. Alternate translation: “They kept lions from eating them” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [justice](#)
- [faith](#)
- [promises](#)
- [of lions](#)
- [worked](#)
- [kingdoms](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [and justly treated men and nations](#)
- [Because they trusted God](#)
- [the things that he promised to give them](#)
- [lions](#)
- [Some ruled Israel](#)
- [lands ruled by powerful men](#)

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Through [faith](#) they conquered [kingdoms](#), [worked justice](#), and received [promises](#). They stopped the mouths [of lions](#),

### UST

<sup>33</sup> [Because they trusted God](#), some of them did great deeds for him. Some conquered [lands ruled by powerful men](#). [Some ruled Israel and justly treated men and nations](#). Some received from God [the things that he promised to give them](#). Some forced [lions](#) to keep their mouths shut.

## Hebrews 11:34

**extinguished the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword (ULT)**

**Some escaped from burning up in fire. Some escaped... others who tried to kill them with swords (UST)**

These are some of the ways God saved believers from death.

Alternate translation: "they kept fire from burning them, they kept their enemies from killing them" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

**were healed of illnesses (ULT)**

**from...Some became well again after being sick (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "received healing from God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**became mighty in battle...and defeated (ULT)**

**Some became powerful when they fought wars...Some caused...to run away from them (UST)**

"and they became mighty in battle and defeated"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [the power](#)
- [mighty](#)
- [extinguished](#)
- [of the sword](#)
- [of fire](#)
- [foreign](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Some escaped from](#)
- [powerful](#)
- [Some escaped from](#)
- [swords](#)
- [burning up in fire](#)
- [that came from foreign lands](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> [extinguished the power of fire](#), escaped the edge [of the sword](#), were healed of illnesses, became [mighty](#) in battle, and defeated [foreign](#) armies.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> [Some escaped from burning up in fire](#). Some escaped from others who tried to kill them with [swords](#). Some became well again after being sick. Some became [powerful](#) when they fought wars. Some caused armies [that came from foreign lands](#) to run away from them.



## Hebrews 11:35

**Women received back their dead by resurrection (ULT)**  
**Some women who trusted God received...back again when God made them live again after they had died...their (UST)**

This can be restated to remove the abstract noun "resurrection." The word "dead" is a nominal adjective. It can be stated as a verb.  
 Alternate translation: "Women received back alive those who had died" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

**But others were tortured, not accepting release (ULT)**  
**their relatives...But others who trusted God were tortured until they died. They were tortured because they refused to agree when...enemies said, "We will release you if you deny that you believe in God (UST)**

It is implied that their enemies would have released them from prison under certain conditions. This can be stated in active form.  
 Alternate translation: "Others accepted torture rather than release from prison" or "Others allowed their enemies to torture them rather than doing what their enemies required of them in order to release them" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**were tortured (ULT)**  
**They were tortured because (UST)**

made to suffer great mental or physical pain

**resurrection...better (ULT)**  
**God made them live again...which is better than continuing to live on earth (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) these people will experience a better life in heaven than what they experienced in this world or 2) these people will have a better resurrection than those who did not have faith. Those with faith will live forever with God. Those without faith will live forever separated from God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [a...resurrection](#) (2)
- [release](#)
- [received back](#)
- [dead](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God made them live again](#)
- [they wanted to live with God forever](#) (2)
- [when...enemies said...We will release you if you deny that you believe in God](#)
- [received...back again](#)
- [after they had died](#)

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Women [received back](#) their [dead](#) by [resurrection](#). But others were tortured, not accepting [release](#), so that they might experience a better [resurrection](#).

### UST

<sup>35</sup> Some women who trusted God [received](#) their relatives [back again](#) when [God made them live again after they had died](#). But others who trusted God were tortured until they died. They were tortured because they refused to agree [when](#) their [enemies said](#), "[We will release you if you deny that you believe in God](#)." They refused to do that, because [they wanted to live with God forever](#), which is better than continuing to live on earth.

## Hebrews 11:36

**others...had testing in mocking and whippings (ULT)**  
**Other people who trusted God...were mocked. Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips. Some were chained (UST)**

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People mocked and whipped others" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**others...had testing in mocking and whippings, and even chains and imprisonment (ULT)**  
**Other people who trusted God...were mocked. Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips. Some were chained and put in prison (UST)**

This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns are expressed as verbs. Alternate translation: "God tested others by allowing their enemies to mock and whip them and even put them in chains and imprison them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [chains](#)
- [had](#)
- [imprisonment](#)
- [whippings](#)
- [in mocking](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Some were chained](#)
- [Some were chained](#)
- [put in prison](#)
- [Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips](#)
- [were mocked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> And others [had](#) testing [in mocking](#) and [whippings](#), and even [chains](#) and [imprisonment](#).

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Other people who trusted God [were mocked](#). [Some had their backs cut open by being struck with whips](#). [Some were chained](#) and [put in prison](#).

## Hebrews 11:37

**They were stoned, they were sawn in two, they were put to the test, they were killed with the sword (ULT)**  
**Some of those believers were stoned to death. Others were sawn completely in two. Others were killed... swords (UST)**

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People mocked and whipped others...People threw stones at others. People sawed others in two. People killed others with the sword" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**They went about (ULT)**  
**Others of these people who trusted God wandered around the land (UST)**

"went from place to place" or "lived all the time"

**in sheepskins and goatskins**

"wearing only the skins of sheep and goats"

**destitute (ULT)**  
**They did not have any money (UST)**

"They had nothing" or "They were very poor"

### Translation Words - ULT

- they were sawn in two
- They were stoned
- they were killed
- the sword
- oppressed

### Translation Words - UST

- Others were sawn completely...two
- Some of those believers were stoned to death
- Others were killed...swords
- Others were killed...swords
- People constantly oppressed them and

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> [They were stoned](#), [they were sawn in two](#), they were put to the test, [they were killed](#) with [the sword](#). They went about in sheepskins and in goatskins, destitute, [oppressed](#), and mistreated. <sup>[2]</sup>

### UST

<sup>37</sup> [Some of those believers were stoned to death](#). [Others were sawn completely in two](#). [Others were killed](#) with [swords](#). Others of these people who trusted God wandered around the land wearing garments made only of skins from sheep and goats. They did not have any money. [People constantly oppressed them and](#) harmed them.

## Hebrews 11:38

### The world was not worthy (ULT)

**The people on earth who caused those who trusted in... to suffer like this were so bad that they did not deserve to live...God (UST)**

Here "world" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "The people of this world were not worthy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### They wandered about (ULT)

**Some who trusted God wandered (UST)**

This was because they had no place to live.

### and...in caves...holes in the ground (ULT)

**Some lived in caves...in other large holes in the ground (UST)**

"caves, and some lived in holes in the ground"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [world](#)
- [deserts](#)
- [ground](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [so bad that they did...deserve to live](#)
- [The people on earth who caused those who trusted in...to suffer like this](#)
- [in deserts](#)
- [ground](#)

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> The [world](#) was not [worthy](#) of them. They wandered about in [deserts](#) and mountains, and in caves and holes in the [ground](#).

### UST

<sup>38</sup> [The people on earth who caused those who trusted in](#) God [to suffer like this](#) were [so bad that they did](#) not [deserve to live](#) with people like those who trusted God. Some who trusted God wandered [in deserts](#) and mountains. Some lived in caves and in other large holes in the [ground](#).

## Hebrews 11:39

**All...these people...were commended because of their faith, yet they did not receive the promise (ULT)**  
**God approved of all these people because they trusted him, he did not give them what he had promised them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God honored all these because of their faith, but they did not themselves receive what God had promised" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the promise (ULT)**  
**what he had promised them (UST)**

This expression stands for "what God had promised them." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [were commended](#)
- [faith](#)
- [promise](#)
- [they did...receive](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God approved of](#)
- [they trusted him](#)
- [what he had promised them](#)
- [he did...give them](#)

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> All these people [were commended](#) because of their [faith](#), yet [they did](#) not [receive](#) the [promise](#).

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> Although [God approved of](#) all these people because [they trusted him](#), [he did](#) not [give them what he had promised them](#).

## Hebrews 11:40

**so that without us, they would not be made perfect (ULT)**

**What God intends is that only when they and we are together will we have all that God intends us to have (UST)**

This can be stated in positive and active form. Alternate translation: "in order that God would perfect us and them together" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [they would...be made perfect](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [will we have all that God intends...to have](#)

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> [God](#) planned something better for us, so that without us, [they would not be made perfect](#).

11:11 <sup>[1]</sup> There is some question about whether it was Abraham's faith or Sarah's faith that was in view. *By faith, even though Sarah herself was barren, that Abraham received ability to father a child. This happened even though he was too old, since he considered as faithful the one who had given the promise .*

11:37 <sup>[2]</sup> Some older versions have *They were stoned. They were sawn in two. They were killed with the sword .*

### UST

<sup>40</sup> [God](#) knew ahead of time that what he would give us and them later would be better than giving them immediately what he promised. What God intends is that only when they and we are together [will we have all that God intends us to have](#).

## Hebrews 12

### Hebrews 12 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

After telling of the value discipline, the author begins a series of exhortations. (See; [exhort](#), [exhortation](#))

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:5-6, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Discipline

God wants his people to do what is right. When they do what is wrong, he needs to correct or punish them. He does this just as earthly fathers correct and punish children whom they love. (See: [discipline](#), [self-discipline](#))

## Hebrews 12:1

### General Information:

The words “we” and “us” refer to the author and his readers. The word “you” is plural and here refers to the readers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Because of this great number of Old Testament believers, the author talks of the life of faith that believers should live with Jesus as their example.

**we have such a large cloud of witnesses surrounding us (ULT)**

**We...know about many people like these who proved that they trusted in God...to us...and (UST)**

The writer speaks about the Old Testament believers as if they were a cloud that surrounded the present-day believers. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “such a large cloud of witnesses surrounds us” or “there are so many examples of faithful people about whom we learn in the scriptures” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**of witnesses (ULT)**

**who proved that they trusted...God (UST)**

Here “witnesses” refers to the Old Testament believers in chapter 11 who lived before the race of faith that believers now run.

**let us lay aside every weight and the easily entangling sin (ULT)**

**Let us put off everything that weighs us down and...we put away the sin that clings (UST)**

Here “weight” and “easily entangling sin” are spoken of as if a person could take them off himself and put them down. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**weight...every (ULT)**

**Let us put off...that weighs us down...everything (UST)**

Attitudes or habits that keep believers from trusting and obeying God are spoken of as if they were loads that would make it difficult for a person to carry while running. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**the easily entangling sin (ULT)**

**the sin that clings (UST)**

Sin is spoken of as if it were a net or something else that can trip people up and make them fall. Alternate translation: “sin that makes obeying God difficult” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Therefore, since we have such a large cloud [of witnesses](#) surrounding us, let us lay aside every weight and the easily entangling [sin](#). [Let us run](#) with [endurance](#) the race that is placed before us.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> We know about many people like these [who proved that they trusted](#) in [God](#). Let us put off everything that weighs us down and so we put away the [sin](#) that clings to us. [Then let us run](#) our race [patiently](#) and [do](#) everything God gives us to do until we make it to the finish line.



**Let us run...the race that is placed before us (ULT)**  
**Then let us run our race...everything God gives us to do until we make it to the finish line (UST)**

Following Jesus is spoken of as if it were running a race. Alternate translation: "Let us continue obeying what God has commanded us, just like a runner keeps going until the race is over" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [sin](#)
- [of witnesses](#)
- [endurance](#)
- [Let us run](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [sin](#)
- [who proved that they trusted...God](#)
- [patiently...do](#)
- [Then let us run](#)

## Hebrews 12:2

### the founder and perfecter of the faith (ULT)

**He is the one who leads us and he makes our faith complete (UST)**

Jesus gives us faith and makes our faith perfect by causing us to reach our goal. Alternate translation: “creator and finisher of our faith” or “the one who enables us to have faith from beginning to end”

### For the joy that was placed before him (ULT)

**the...him. He did this because he knew how joyful God would make him later (UST)**

The joy that Jesus would experience is spoken of as if God the Father had placed it before him as a goal to reach. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### despising its shame (ULT)

**he paid no attention to the people who tried to shame (UST)**

This means he was not concerned about the shame of dying on a cross.

### and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God (ULT)

**and...He now sits at the place of highest honor in the throne where God rules in heaven (UST)**

To sit at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Hebrews 1:3](#). Alternate translation: “sat down at the place of honor and authority beside the throne of God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [the cross](#)
- [faith](#)
- [its shame](#)
- [endured](#)
- [throne](#)
- [joy](#)
- [perfecter](#)
- [founder](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [He now sits at the place of highest honor](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Let us pay attention to [Jesus](#), the [founder](#) and [perfecter](#) of the [faith](#). For the [joy](#) that was placed before him, he [endured the cross](#), despising [its shame](#), and sat down at [the right hand](#) of the [throne of God](#).

### UST

<sup>2</sup> And let us keep thinking about [Jesus](#) and give him all our attention. [He is](#) the one who [leads us](#) and [he makes our faith complete](#). [He is the one](#) who [endured the terrible suffering on the cross](#) and he paid no attention to the people who tried [to shame](#) him. He did this because he knew [how joyful](#) God would make him later. [He now sits at the place of highest honor](#) in the [throne](#) where [God](#) rules in heaven.

- cross
- faith
- to shame
- He is the one...endured the terrible suffering on
- throne
- how joyful
- he makes our...complete
- He is...one...leads us

## Hebrews 12:3

**you...become weary in your hearts (ULT)**

**you will...give up trusting God (UST)**

Here “hearts” represents a person’s thoughts and emotions.  
Alternate translation: “discouraged” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sinners](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [who has endured](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sinful people](#)
- [you](#)
- [Jesus patiently endured it](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> So think about him, the one [who has endured](#) such opposition from [sinners](#) against himself, so that you do not become weary in your [hearts](#) and give up.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> [Jesus patiently endured it](#) when [sinful people](#) hatefully acted against him. Strengthen your hearts and minds with Jesus’ example so that [you](#) will not give up trusting God or become discouraged.

## Hebrews 12:4

### Connecting Statement:

The author of Hebrews has been comparing the Christian life to a race.

**not yet...You have...resisted...struggling against sin (ULT)**

**you have not yet...you have struggled against being tempted to sin...because of resisting evil, as Jesus did (UST)**

Here “sin” is spoken of as if it were a person whom someone fights in a battle. Alternate translation: “You have not yet had to endure attacks of sinners” (See: [Personification](#))

**to the point of blood (ULT)**

**While...bled and died (UST)**

Resisting opposition so much that one dies for it is spoken of as if one reached a certain place where he would die. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**of blood (ULT)**

**bled and died (UST)**

Here “blood” refers to death. Alternate translation: “of death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [of blood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#)
- [bled and died](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> You have not yet resisted to the point [of blood](#), struggling against [sin](#).

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> While you have struggled against being tempted to [sin](#), you have not yet [bled and died](#) because of resisting evil, as Jesus did.

## Hebrews 12:5

**the encouragement that...you...addresses (ULT)**  
**these words that Solomon spoke to...which...you... encourages (UST)**

Old Testament scripture is spoken of as if it were a person who could encourage others. Alternate translation: "what God has instructed you in the scriptures to encourage you" (See: [Personification](#))

**as sons...My son (ULT)**  
**his son...are the same with which God...as his children... My son (UST)**

The word translated "sons" and "son" is specifically the word for a male child. In that culture the family line continued through the sons, not normally through the daughters. However, as stated by the UST and some English versions, the author is directing his words to both males and females. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

**My son...when you are corrected by him (ULT)**  
**My son...when the Lord punishes you (UST)**

Here the author is quoting from the book of Proverbs in the Old Testament, which was the words of Solomon to his male children.

**do not think lightly of the Lord's discipline, nor grow weary (ULT)**  
**pay attention when the Lord is disciplining you...do not be discouraged (UST)**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "take it very seriously when the Lord disciplines you, and do not grow weary" (See: [Litotes](#))

**nor grow weary (ULT)**  
**when the...be discouraged (UST)**

"and do not become discouraged"

**when you are corrected by him (ULT)**  
**when the Lord punishes you (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he corrects you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord's
- of the...discipline
- sons
- My son
- encouragement
- as
- when you are corrected

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> And you have forgotten the [encouragement](#) that addresses you [as sons](#): "[My son](#), do not think lightly [of the Lord's discipline](#), nor grow weary [when you are corrected](#) by him."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Do not forget these [words that Solomon spoke to his son](#), which [are the same with which God](#) encourages you [as his children](#): "[My son](#), pay attention when the [Lord is disciplining you](#), and do not be discouraged when the Lord [punishes you](#),

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- is disciplining you
- his son
- My son
- words that Solomon spoke to
- are the same with which God...as his children
- punishes you

## Hebrews 12:6

**everyone whom...every son...he receives (ULT)**  
**everyone...everyone he calls his own (UST)**

The word translated "son" is specifically the word for a male child. In that culture the family line continued through the sons, not normally through the daughters. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- the Lord
- disciplines
- he loves
- son
- he receives

### Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- he also disciplines
- loves
- he calls his own
- he calls his own

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> For [the Lord disciplines](#) everyone whom [he loves](#), and he punishes every [son](#) whom [he receives](#).

### UST

<sup>6</sup> because everyone [the Lord loves he also disciplines](#), and he severely corrects everyone [he calls his own](#)."



## Hebrews 12:7

### Endure suffering as discipline (ULT)

### God may discipline you by requiring you to endure difficult things that happen to (UST)

"Understand that during suffering God teaches us discipline"

### God deals with you as with sons (ULT)

### you. When God disciplines you, he is treating you as a father treats his children (UST)

This compares God disciplining his people to a father disciplining his sons. You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "God deals with you the same way a father deals with his sons" (See: [Simile](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### with you...son is there (ULT)

### you...their children (UST)

All occurrences of these words may be stated to include males and females. Alternate translation: "children...child" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### For what son is there whom his father does not discipline (ULT)

### All fathers discipline their children (UST)

The author makes the point through this question that every good father disciplines his children. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "every father disciplines his children!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- discipline
- discipline
- with sons
- son is there
- God
- his father
- Endure suffering
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- God may discipline you by requiring you
- discipline
- treats his children
- their children
- When God disciplines you
- fathers
- endure difficult things that happen to
- as a father

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> [Endure suffering](#) as [discipline](#). [God](#) deals with you [as with sons](#). For what [son is there](#) whom [his father](#) does not [discipline](#)?

### UST

<sup>7</sup> [God may discipline you by requiring you](#) to [endure difficult things that happen to](#) you. [When God disciplines you](#), he is treating you [as a father treats his children](#). All [fathers discipline their children](#).

## Hebrews 12:8

**But if you are without discipline, of which all people have become partakers (ULT)  
if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children (UST)**

You can restate the abstract noun “discipline” as the verb “disciplining.” Alternate translation: “So if you have not experienced God disciplining you like he disciplines all his children” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

**then you are illegitimate and not his sons (ULT)  
So...you are not true children of God. You are like illegitimate children who have no father to correct them (UST)**

Those whom God does not discipline are spoken of as if they are sons born to a man and a woman who are not married each other. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [discipline](#)
- [his sons](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God disciplining you](#)
- [you are...true children of God](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> But if you are without [discipline](#), of which all people have become partakers, then you are illegitimate and not [his sons](#).

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So if you have not experienced [God disciplining you](#) like he disciplines all his children, [you are](#) not [true children of God](#). You are like illegitimate children who have no father to correct them.

## Hebrews 12:9

**much...Should we...more submit to the Father of spirits and live (ULT)**

**should certainly...we...more readily accept God our spiritual Father disciplining us so we will live eternally (UST)**

The author uses an exclamation to emphasize that we should obey God the Father. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Therefore even more so, we should obey the Father of spirits and live." (See: [Exclamations](#))

**to the Father of spirits (ULT)**  
**God our spiritual Father (UST)**

This idiom contrasts with "fathers in the flesh." Alternate translation: "our spiritual Father" or "our Father in heaven" (See: [Idiom](#))

**and...live (ULT)**  
**and...we will live eternally (UST)**

"so that we will live"

### Translation Words - ULT

- live
- who disciplined us
- human
- of spirits
- Father
- fathers
- Should we...submit

### Translation Words - UST

- we will live eternally
- disciplined us
- natural...So
- spiritual
- God our...Father
- fathers
- we...readily accept...disciplining us

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Furthermore, we indeed had our [human fathers who disciplined us](#) and we respected them. [Should we](#) not much more [submit](#) to the [Father of spirits](#) and [live](#)?

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Furthermore, our [natural fathers disciplined us](#) when we were young, and we respected them for doing that. [So](#) we should certainly more [readily accept God our spiritual Father disciplining us](#) so [we will live eternally!](#)

## Hebrews 12:10

**so that we can share in his holiness (ULT)**  
**to...share in his holy nature (UST)**

This metaphor speaks of “holiness” as if it were an object that can be shared among people. Alternate translation: “so that we may become holy as God is holy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [disciplined us](#)
- [in...holiness](#)
- [thought best](#)
- [good](#)
- [a...while](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [always disciplines us](#)
- [holy nature](#)
- [as...considered right](#)
- [help us](#)
- [a...time](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> For indeed our fathers [disciplined us](#) for a little [while](#) as they [thought best](#). But God disciplines us for our [good](#), so that we can share in his [holiness](#).

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Our natural fathers disciplined us for a short [time](#) as they [considered right](#), but God [always disciplines us](#) to [help us](#) share in his [holy nature](#).

## Hebrews 12:11

**the peaceful fruit...it produces...of righteousness (ULT)  
produces peace in us...it causes...to live righteously (UST)**

"Fruit" here is a metaphor for "result" or "outcome." Alternate translation: "it produces the peaceful result of righteousness" or "it produces righteousness, which results in peace" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**for those who have been trained by it (ULT)  
those who have learned from it...which (UST)**

"who have been trained by discipline." The discipline or correction done by the Lord is spoken of as if it were the Lord himself. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God has trained by disciplining them" (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [of righteousness](#)
- [discipline](#)
- [the...fruit](#)
- [joyful](#)
- [peaceful](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [righteously](#)
- [God is disciplining us](#)
- [produces](#)
- [we can rejoice](#)
- [peace in us](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> Now indeed all [discipline](#) does not seem to be [joyful](#) at the time, but painful. But later it produces the [peaceful fruit of righteousness](#) for those who have been trained by it.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> During the time [God is disciplining us](#), it does not seem to be anything about which [we can rejoice](#). Instead, it pains us. But later it causes those who have learned from it to live [righteously](#), which [produces peace in us](#).

## Hebrews 12:12

**strengthen your hands that hang down and your weak knees (ULT)  
instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out, trust God's discipline to renew you (UST)**

Possibly this continues the metaphor about the race in [Hebrews 12:1](#). It is in this way that the author speaks about living as Christians and helping others. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So strengthen your [hands](#) that hang down and your weak knees.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So, [instead of acting as though you were spiritually tired out](#), trust God's discipline to renew you.

## Hebrews 12:13

### **Make straight...paths...for your feet (ULT)**

### **Go straight forward following the Messiah...you (UST)**

Possibly this continues the metaphor about the race in [Hebrews 12:1](#). It is in this way that the author speaks about living as Christians and helping others. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **straight...paths (ULT)**

### **Go straight forward following the Messiah (UST)**

Living so as to honor and please God is spoken of as if it were a straight path to follow. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **what is lame will not be sprained (ULT)**

### **the Messiah will gain strength from...not become crippled...as an injured...useless limb (UST)**

In this metaphor of running a race, "lame" represents another person in the race who is hurt and wants to quit. This, in turn, represent the Christians themselves. Alternate translation: "whoever is weak and wants to quit will not sprain his ankle" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### **not...will...be sprained (ULT)**

### **not become...as an injured (UST)**

Someone who stops obeying God is spoken of as if he injured his foot or ankle on a path. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will not sprain his ankle" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### **be healed...rather (ULT)**

### **Instead, they will be spiritually restored...becomes well...again (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "instead become strong" or "instead God will heal him" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [be healed](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Instead, they will be spiritually restored...becomes well](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>13</sup> Make straight paths for your feet, so that what is lame will not be sprained but rather [be healed](#).

### **UST**

<sup>13</sup> Go straight forward following the Messiah so that believers who are weak in trusting the Messiah will gain strength from you and not become crippled. [Instead, they will be spiritually restored](#) as an injured and useless limb [becomes well](#) again.

## Hebrews 12:14

### General Information:

The man Esau, who was told about in the writings of Moses, refers to Isaac's first son and Jacob's brother.

### Pursue peace with everyone (ULT)

### Try to live peacefully with all people (UST)

Here the abstract noun "peace" is spoken of as if it were something that a person must chase after and can be translated with an adverb. Alternate translation: "Try to live peacefully with everyone" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Pursue [peace](#) with everyone, and the [holiness](#) without which no one will see the [Lord](#).

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Try to live [peacefully](#) with all people. [Do your best to be holy](#), since no one will see the [Lord](#) if he is not holy.

### and the holiness without which no one will see the Lord (ULT)

### Do your best to be holy, since no one will see the Lord if he is not (UST)

This can be expressed as a positive encouragement. Alternate translation: "also work hard to be holy, because only holy people will see the Lord" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### and the holiness (ULT)

### Do your best to be holy (UST)

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: "also pursue the holiness" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [holiness](#)
- [peace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [Do your best to be holy](#)
- [peacefully](#)



## Hebrews 12:15

**no one lacks God's grace (ULT)**  
**everyone among you experiences the kind things that**  
**God does for us. Kind things that we do not deserve**  
**(UST)**

"no one receives God's grace and then lets go of it" or "no one rejects God's grace after first trusting in him"

**and that no root of bitterness grows up to cause**  
**trouble, and by this many may become polluted (ULT)**  
**Be on guard so that none of you act in an evil way**  
**toward others, because that will grow like a root grows**  
**into a big plant, leading many believers to sin (UST)**

Hateful or resentful attitudes are spoken of as if they were a plant bitter to the taste. Alternate translation: "that no one becomes like a bitter root, which when it grows causes trouble and harms many people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [grace](#)
- [God's](#)
- [to cause trouble](#)
- [may become polluted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Kind things that we do not deserve](#)
- [God](#)
- [leading](#)
- [sin](#)

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> See that no one lacks [God's grace](#), and that no root of bitterness grows up [to cause trouble](#), and by this many [may become polluted](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Make sure that everyone among you experiences the kind things that [God](#) does for us. [Kind things that we do not deserve](#). Be on guard so that none of you act in an evil way toward others, because that will grow like a root grows into a big plant, [leading](#) many believers to [sin](#).

## Hebrews 12:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- birthright
- Esau
- ungodly person
- such as
- sexually immoral

### Translation Words - UST

- rights he had as a firstborn son
- Esau
- disobey God
- like
- be immoral

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> See that there is no [sexually immoral](#) or [ungodly person such as Esau](#), who for one meal sold his own [birthright](#).

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> Do not let anyone [be immoral](#) or [disobey God like Esau](#). He exchanged the [rights he had as a firstborn son](#) for only one meal.

## Hebrews 12:17

### he was rejected (ULT)

### But Isaac refused to do what (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “his father, Isaac, refused to bless him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### because he found no opportunity for repentance (ULT) For Esau found no way to change what he had done (UST)

The abstract noun “repentance” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: “because it was not possible for him to repent” or “because it was not possible for him to change his decision” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### even though he sought it with tears (ULT) later...Esau requested...even though he sought it tearfully (UST)

Here “he” refers to Esau.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [blessing](#)
- [to inherit](#)
- [for repentance](#)
- [he sought](#)
- [he was rejected](#)
- [you know](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [all...his father Isaac's blessing would give him](#)
- [his birth rights](#)
- [change what he had done](#)
- [Esau requested](#)
- [But Isaac refused to do what](#)
- [you know that Esau](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> For [you know](#) that even afterwards, when he desired [to inherit](#) the [blessing](#), [he was rejected](#), because he found no opportunity [for repentance](#), even though [he sought](#) it with tears.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> For [you know that Esau](#) later wanted to get back [his birth rights](#) and [all](#) that [his father Isaac's blessing would give him](#). [But Isaac refused to do what Esau requested](#). For Esau found no way to [change what he had done](#), even though he sought it tearfully.

## Hebrews 12:18

### General Information:

The words “you” and “You” refer to the Hebrew believers to whom the author wrote. The word “they” refers to people of Israel after Moses led them out of Egypt. The first quotation comes from the writings of Moses. God reveals in this passage in Hebrews that Moses said he shook at seeing the mountain.

### Connecting Statement:

The author gives a contrast between what believers in Moses’ time had while living under the law and what present day believers have after coming to Jesus under the new covenant. He illustrates the experience of the Israelites by describing how God appeared to them at Mount Sinai.

**For you have not come to something that can be touched (ULT)**

**In coming to God, you have not experienced things (UST)**

The implicit information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “For you have not come, as the people of Israel came, to a mountain that can be touched” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**you have...come to (ULT)**

**In coming to God (UST)**

This means that believers in Christ have not come to a physical mountain like Mount Sinai that a person can touch or see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that a person can touch” or “that people can perceive with their senses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [darkness](#)
- [a...fire](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [gloomy](#)
- [They approached a blazing fire](#)

### ULT

**18** For you have not come to something that can be touched, a blazing [fire](#), [darkness](#), gloom, and storm,

### UST

**18** In coming to God, you have not experienced things like what the Israelite people experienced at Mount Sinai. They approached a mountain that God commanded them not to touch because he himself had come down to that mountain. [They approached a blazing fire](#), and it was [gloomy](#) and dark, with a violent storm.

## Hebrews 12:19

**to a trumpet blast (ULT)**

**a trumpet sound (UST)**

“You have not come to a place where there is the loud sound of a trumpet”

**or to a voice that speaks words whose hearers begged that not another word be spoken to them (ULT)  
and they heard God speak a message. It was so powerful that they pleaded for him not to speak to them like that again (UST)**

Here “voice” refers to someone speaking. The phrase “be spoken” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “or where God was speaking in such a way that those who heard him begged him not to speak another word to them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [to a voice](#)
- [to a trumpet](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God speak](#)
- [a trumpet](#)

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> and [to a trumpet](#) blast, or [to a voice](#) that speaks words whose hearers begged that not another word be spoken to them.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> They heard [a trumpet](#) sound, and they heard [God speak](#) a message. It was so powerful that they pleaded for him not to speak to them like that again.

## Hebrews 12:20

### what was commanded (ULT)

### God had commanded them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### it must be stoned (ULT)

### you must kill him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must stone it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [what was commanded](#)
- [it must be stoned](#)
- [an animal](#)
- [they could...endure](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God had commanded them](#)
- [you must kill him](#)
- [a person or even an animal](#)
- [The people were terrified](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> For [they could](#) not [endure what was commanded](#): "If even [an animal](#) touches the mountain, [it must be stoned](#)." <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>20</sup> For [God had commanded them](#), "If a [person or even an animal](#) touches this mountain, [you must kill him](#)." [The people were terrified](#).

## Hebrews 12:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fearful
- terrified
- that Moses
- am trembling

### Translation Words - UST

- terrified
- I am very afraid
- Moses
- trembling

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> So [fearful](#) was this sight [that Moses](#) said, "I am [terrified](#) and [am trembling](#)."

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Truly, because [Moses](#) was [terrified](#) after seeing what happened on the mountain, he said, "I am [trembling](#) because [I am very afraid](#)!"

## Hebrews 12:22

### General Information:

The man Abel was the son of the first man and woman, Adam and Eve. Cain, also their son, murdered Abel.

### Mount Zion (ULT)

#### on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which (UST)

The writer speaks of Mount Zion, the temple mount in Jerusalem, as if it were heaven itself, the residence of God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to tens of thousands of angels (ULT)

#### countless angels who are rejoicing as they have (UST)

“an uncountable number of angels”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [heavenly](#)
- [of angels](#)
- [of the...God](#)
- [Mount Zion](#)
- [the...Jerusalem](#)
- [in celebration](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [who truly lives](#)
- [in heaven](#)
- [angels who are rejoicing as they have](#)
- [God](#)
- [on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which](#)
- [the earthly Jerusalem was built](#)
- [gathered together](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Instead, you have come to [Mount Zion](#) and to the city [of the living God](#), the [heavenly Jerusalem](#), and to tens of thousands [of angels in celebration](#),

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Instead, you have come to the presence of God [who truly lives in heaven](#), to the “New Jerusalem.” That is like what your ancestors did when they came to worship [God on Mount Zion in Israel, upon which the earthly Jerusalem was built](#). You have come to where there are countless [angels who are rejoicing as they have gathered together](#).



## Hebrews 12:23

### of the firstborn (ULT)

### who have privileges as firstborn sons (UST)

This speaks of believers in Christ as if they were firstborn sons. This emphasizes their special place and privilege as God's people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### who have been registered in heaven (ULT)

### whose names God has written down in heaven (UST)

"whose names are written in heaven." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whose names God has written in heaven" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### who have been made perfect (ULT)

### whom God has now made perfect in heaven (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom God has made perfect" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [of the righteous ones](#)
- [to the congregation](#)
- [to God](#)
- [to the spirits](#)
- [who have been made perfect](#)
- [the Judge](#)
- [of the firstborn](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [people who lived righteously before they died](#)
- [assembly of all the believers](#)
- [God](#)
- [the spirits of...s people are](#)
- [whom God has now made perfect in heaven](#)
- [will judge](#)
- [who have privileges as firstborn sons](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> and [to the congregation of the firstborn](#), who have been registered in [heaven](#), and [to God, the Judge](#) of all, and [to the spirits of the righteous ones who have been made perfect](#),

### UST

<sup>23</sup> You have joined the [assembly of all the believers who have privileges as firstborn sons](#), whose names God has written down in [heaven](#). You have come to God, who [will judge](#) everyone. You have come to where [the spirits of God's people are, people who lived righteously before they died](#), and [whom God has now made perfect in heaven](#).

## Hebrews 12:24

### **the mediator of a new covenant (ULT) who arranged a new covenant between us (UST)**

This means Jesus caused the new covenant between God and humans to exist. See how you translated this phrase in [Hebrews 9:15](#).

### **to the sprinkled blood that speaks better than Abel's blood (ULT) by the blood that flowed when he died on the cross... made it possible for God to forgive us...his blood confirms better promises for us than Abel's blood (UST)**

The blood of Jesus and the blood of Abel are spoken of as if they were people calling out. Alternate translation: "the sprinkled blood of Jesus that says better things than the blood of Abel" (See: [Personification](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **to the...blood (ULT) by the blood that flowed when he died on...cross (UST)**

Here "blood" stands for Jesus' death, as Abel's blood stands for his death. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [to Jesus](#)
- [to the...blood](#)
- [of a...covenant](#)
- [Abel's](#)
- [the mediator](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Jesus' blood](#)
- [by the blood that flowed when he died on...cross](#)
- [a...covenant between us](#)
- [Abel's blood](#)
- [who arranged](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>24</sup> and [to Jesus](#), [the mediator of a new covenant](#), and [to the](#) sprinkled [blood](#) that speaks better than [Abel's](#) blood.

#### **UST**

<sup>24</sup> You have come to Jesus, [who arranged](#) a new [covenant between us](#) and God [by the blood that flowed when he died on](#) the [cross](#). [Jesus' blood](#) made it possible for God to forgive us, and his blood confirms better promises for us than [Abel's blood](#).

## Hebrews 12:25

### General Information:

This quotation is from the prophet Haggai in the Old Testament. The word “you” continues to refer to believers. The word “we” continues to refer to the writer and the readers who are believers. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Connecting Statement:

Having contrasted the Israelites’ experience at Mount Sinai with the believers’ experience after Christ died, the writer reminds believers that they have the same God who warns them today. This is the fifth main warning given to believers.

**you do not refuse the one who is speaking (ULT)**  
**not refuse to listen to God who is speaking to you (UST)**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “you pay attention to the one who is speaking” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

**if...they did not escape (ULT)**

**if...Israelite people did not escape God punishing them...we shall...not escape God punishing us (UST)**

The implicit information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “if the people of Israel did not escape judgment” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**on earth...the one who is speaking...the one who warned them (ULT)**  
**here on earth...God who...them (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) “Moses, who warned them here on earth” or 2) “God, who warned them at Mount Sinai”

**will we escape if we turn away from the one who warns us from heaven (ULT)**  
**we reject what he says when he warns us from heaven (UST)**

Disobeying God is spoken of as if a person were changing direction and walking away from him. Alternate translation: “if we disobey the one who is warning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [turn away from](#)
- [earth](#)
- [you...refuse](#)
- [when they refused](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [reject](#)
- [here...earth](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> See that you do not [refuse](#) the one who is speaking. For if they did not escape [when they refused](#) the one who warned them on [earth](#), much less will we escape if we [turn away from](#) the one who warns us from [heaven](#).

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Beware that you do not [refuse to listen to](#) God who is speaking to you. The Israelite people did not escape God punishing them [when they rejected his warning to](#) them [here](#) on [earth](#). For we shall surely not escape God punishing us if we [reject](#) what he says when he warns us from [heaven](#)!

- refuse to listen to
- when they rejected his warning to

## Hebrews 12:26

**his voice shook the earth (ULT)**

**When God...his voice shook the earth (UST)**

“when God spoke, the sound of his voice caused the earth to shake”

**shook...will shake (ULT)**

**shook...will shake (UST)**

Use the word for what an earthquake does in moving the ground. This refers back to [Hebrews 12:18-21](#) and what happened when the people saw the mountain where Moses received the law from God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [he has promised](#)
- [voice](#)
- [earth](#)
- [earth](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heavens also](#)
- [he makes...promise](#)
- [God...his voice](#)
- [earth](#)
- [earth](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> At one time, his [voice](#) shook the [earth](#). But now [he has promised](#), saying, “Once more I will shake not only the [earth](#), but also the [heavens](#).”

### UST

<sup>26</sup> When [God](#) spoke from Mount Sinai [his voice](#) shook the [earth](#), but now [he makes](#) another [promise](#): “Once again I will shake not only the [earth](#) but the [heavens also](#).”

## Hebrews 12:27

### General Information:

Here the quotation from the prophet Haggai is repeated from the previous verse.

**mean the removal of what is shaken, that is, of what has been created (ULT)**

**indicate...God will remove those things on earth that he will shake, everything that he has created (UST)**

The abstract noun "removal" can be translated with the verb "remove." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "mean that God will remove the things that he can shake, that is, the things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**of what is shaken (ULT)**

**shake, everything (UST)**

Use the word for what an earthquake does in moving the ground. This refers back to [Hebrews 12:18-21](#) and what happened when the people saw the mountain where Moses received the law from God. See how you translated "shook" and "shake" in [Hebrews 12:26](#).

**of what has been created (ULT)**

**those things on earth...that he has created (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God has created" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**what is not shaken (ULT)**

**the things in heaven that cannot shake (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that do not shake" or "the things that cannot shake" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**what is not shaken (ULT)**

**the things in heaven that cannot shake (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that does not shake" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [that is](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [that he will](#)

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But these words, "Once more," mean the removal of what is shaken, [that is](#), of what has been created, so that what is not shaken will remain.

### UST

<sup>27</sup> The words "again, one more time" indicate that God will remove those things on earth [that he will](#) shake, everything that he has created. He will do this in order that the things in heaven that cannot shake may remain forever.

## Hebrews 12:28

**an...kingdom...since we are receiving (ULT)**  
**a kingdom...that we are becoming members of (UST)**

You can add the words “because we are” to make clear the logical connection between this statement and the next statement.  
 Alternate translation: “because we are receiving a kingdom” or “because God is making us members of his kingdom” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

**let us have gratitude (ULT)**  
**let us thank God (UST)**

“let us give thanks”

**with reverence and awe (ULT)**  
**and by showing him great honor and respect (UST)**

The words “reverence” and “awe” share similar meanings and emphasize the greatness of reverence due to God.  
 Alternate translation: “with great respect and dread” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [gratitude](#)
- [to God](#)
- [an...kingdom](#)
- [since we are receiving](#)
- [reverence](#)
- [we may worship](#)
- [awe](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [let us thank God](#)
- [God](#)
- [a kingdom](#)
- [that we are becoming members of](#)
- [great honor](#)
- [worshiping him](#)
- [respect](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Therefore, [since we are receiving](#) an unshakeable [kingdom](#), let us have [gratitude](#), by which [we may worship](#) in a manner pleasing [to God](#), with [reverence](#) and [awe](#).

### UST

<sup>28</sup> So [let us thank God that we are becoming members of a kingdom](#) that nothing can shake. And in this kingdom we please [God](#) by [worshiping him](#) and by showing him [great honor](#) and [respect](#).

## Hebrews 12:29

**our God is a consuming fire (ULT)**  
**the God we worship...a fire that burns up everything**  
**that is impure (UST)**

God is spoken of here as if he were a fire that can burn up anything.  
 (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [is a...fire](#)
- [consuming](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [the God](#)
- [a fire](#)
- [that burns up everything that is impure](#)

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> For our [God is a consuming fire](#).

12:20 <sup>[1]</sup> Some older versions have *If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned or shot with an arrow* .

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Remember that [the God](#) we worship is like [a fire that burns up everything that is impure](#)!



## **Hebrews 13**

### **Hebrews 13 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The author finishes the list of exhortations he began in chapter 12. Then he asks the readers to pray for him and ends the letter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 13:6, which are words from the Old Testament.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Hospitality**

God wants his people to invite other people to come to their homes to eat food and even to sleep. His people should do this even if they do not know well the people they are inviting. In the Old Testament, Abraham and his nephew Lot both showed hospitality to people they did not know. Abraham served a costly meal to them, and then Lot invited them to sleep in his house. They learned later that those people were actually angels.

## Hebrews 13:1

### Connecting Statement:

In this closing section, the author gives specific instructions to believers on how they are supposed to live.

### Let brotherly love continue (ULT)

### Continue to love your fellow believers (UST)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Let [brotherly love](#) continue.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Continue to [love your fellow believers](#).

“Continue to show your love for other believers as you would for a member of your family”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brotherly love](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love your fellow believers](#)

## Hebrews 13:2

### Do not forget (ULT)

### Do not forget (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Be sure to remember" (See: [Litotes](#))

### hospitality (ULT)

### to be hospitable to needy travelers (UST)

"to welcome and show kindness to strangers"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [angels into their home](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Do not forget hospitality, for through this, some have shown hospitality to [angels](#) without knowing it.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Do not forget to be hospitable to needy travelers. By caring for strangers, some people have welcomed [angels into their home](#) without knowing it.

## Hebrews 13:3

**as if you were bound with them (ULT)**  
**though you were in prison with them...as (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as if you were tied up along with them" or "as if you were in prison with them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**Remember those who are mistreated (ULT)**  
**were suffering physically (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom others are mistreating" or "who are suffering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**as if you also were with them in body (ULT)**  
**as...and...they are suffering physically (UST)**

This phrase encourages believers to think about other people's suffering as they would think about their own suffering. Alternate translation: "as if you were the one suffering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [prisoners](#)
- [you were bound with them](#)
- [body](#)
- [as if](#)
- [as if](#) (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- [are in prison because they are believers](#)
- [though you were in prison with them](#)
- [physically](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Remember the [prisoners](#), [as if you were bound with them](#). Remember those who are mistreated, [as if](#) you also were with them in [body](#).

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Remember to help those who [are in prison because they are believers](#), [as though you were in prison with them](#) and were suffering physically [as](#) they are suffering [physically](#)..

## Hebrews 13:4

**Let marriage be respected by everyone (ULT)**  
**Men...women who are married to each other must respect each other in every way (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Men and women who are married to each other must respect each other" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**the marriage bed be pure (ULT)**  
**they must be faithful to each other (UST)**

This refers to the act of sexual union as if it were only the bed of a married couple. Alternate translation: "Let husbands and wives honor their marriage relationship to one another and not sleep with other people" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Let...be respected](#)
- [adulterers](#)
- [will judge](#)
- [marriage bed](#)
- [the sexually immoral people](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [must respect each other](#)
- [or adulterously](#)
- [will surely condemn](#)
- [they must be faithful to each other](#)
- [those who act immorally](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Let marriage [be respected](#) by everyone, and the [marriage bed](#) be pure, for [God will judge the sexually immoral people](#) and [adulterers](#).

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Men and women who are married to each other [must respect each other](#) in every way, and [they must be faithful to each other. God will surely condemn those who act immorally or adulterously.](#)

## Hebrews 13:5

**Let your conduct be free from the love of money (ULT)**  
**Live without constantly wanting money, and be happy...matter how much or little you own (UST)**

Here "conduct" refers to a person's character or the way he lives, and "free from the love of money" refers to not greatly desiring to have more money. A person who loves money is not content with the amount of money he has. Alternate translation: "Let your conduct not be affected by the love of money" or "Do not greatly wish to have more money"

**Be content (ULT)**  
**be happy...matter how much or little you own (UST)**

"Be satisfied"

### Translation Words - ULT

- will I forsake
- Let...be free from the love of money

### Translation Words - UST

- stop providing
- Live without constantly wanting money, and

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Let your conduct [be free from the love of money](#). Be content with the things you have, for God himself has said, "I will never leave you, nor never [will I forsake](#) you."

### UST

<sup>5</sup> [Live without constantly wanting money, and](#) be happy no matter how much or little you own in your present circumstances. Remember what Moses wrote that God said: "I will never leave you; I will never [stop providing](#) for you."

## Hebrews 13:6

**The Lord is my helper...can a man do to me (ULT)**  
**Since the Lord is the one who helps me...People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me (UST)**

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms in the Old Testament.  
 (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

**I will...not...be afraid. What can a man do to me (ULT)**  
**I will...not...be afraid! People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me (UST)**

The author uses a question to emphasize that he does not fear people because God is helping him. Here “man” means any person in general. Alternate translation: “I will not fear what any person can do to me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I will...be afraid](#)
- [The Lord](#)
- [confidently](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I will...be afraid](#)
- [Since the Lord](#)
- [confidently](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So we [confidently](#) say, “[The Lord](#) is my helper; [I will](#) not [be afraid](#). What can a man do to me?”

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So we can say [confidently](#) as the psalmist said, “[Since the Lord](#) is the one who helps me, [I will](#) not [be afraid](#)! People can do nothing to me that will keep God from helping me.”

## Hebrews 13:7

### God's word (ULT)

### message of God about the Messiah (UST)

"what God has said"

### the result of their conduct (ULT)

### how they have conducted their lives...how they have (UST)

"the outcome of the way they behave"

### imitate their faith (ULT)

### and imitate...trusted in the Messiah (UST)

Here the trust in God and the way of life led by these leaders are spoken of as "their faith." Alternate translation: "Trust and obey God in the same way they do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Consider your leaders, those who spoke [God's word](#) to you, and considering the result of their conduct, [imitate](#) their [faith](#).

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Your spiritual leaders have told you the [message of God about the Messiah](#). Remember how they have conducted their lives [and imitate](#) how they have [trusted in](#) the [Messiah](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God's](#)
- [God's...word](#)
- [faith](#)
- [imitate](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [message...of God...about the Messiah](#)
- [trusted in...Messiah](#)
- [and imitate](#)



## Hebrews 13:8

**is the same yesterday, today, and forever (ULT)**  
**the same now as he always has been, and he will be the same forever (UST)**

Here “yesterday” means all times in the past. Alternate translation: “is the same in the past, the present, and in the future forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus Christ](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [forever](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus the Messiah is](#)
- [the Messiah is](#)
- [same forever](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> [Jesus Christ](#) is the same yesterday, today, and [forever](#).

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> [Jesus the Messiah is](#) the same now as he always has been, and he will be the [same forever](#).

## Hebrews 13:9

### General Information:

This section refers to animal sacrifices made by believers in God in Old Testament times, which covered their sins temporarily until the death of Christ came about.

**Do not be carried away by various and strange teachings (ULT)**

**So do not let other people mislead you to believe other things about God, strange things that you have not learned...us...and (UST)**

Being persuaded by various teachings is spoken of as if a person were being carried away by a force. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not let others persuade you to believe their various strange teachings" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**by various and strange teachings (ULT)**

**So do not let other people...to believe other things about God, strange things that you have...learned...us...and (UST)**

"many, different teachings that are not the good news we told you"

**it is good...that the heart should be strengthened by grace, not by foods that do not help those who walk by them (ULT)**

**true...from...our...strength comes from God's acts of kindness towards us, rather than following various rules about what to eat...not to eat (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we become stronger when we think of how God has been kind to us, but we do not become stronger by obeying rules about food" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**that the heart should be strengthened (ULT)**

**our...strength (UST)**

Here "heart" is a metonym for the "inner being." Alternate translation: "we should be strengthened inwardly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**by foods (ULT)**

**about...to eat...not to eat (UST)**

Here "foods" stands for rules about food. (See: [Metonymy](#))

**those who walk (ULT)**

**following various rules (UST)**

Living is spoken of as if it were walking. Alternate translation: "those who live by them" or "those who regulate their lives by them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Do not be carried away by various and strange [teachings](#). For [it is good](#) that the [heart should be strengthened by grace](#), not by foods that do not [help](#) those who walk by them.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> [So do not let other people](#) mislead you [to believe](#) other things about God, strange things that you have not learned from us. For [our true strength comes from God's acts of kindness towards us](#), rather than following various rules about what to eat and not to eat.

### Translation Words - ULT

- by grace
- heart
- it is good
- do...help
- that...should be strengthened
- by...teachings

### Translation Words - UST

- comes from God's acts of kindness towards
- our...strength
- true
- us
- our...strength
- So do not let other people...to believe

## Hebrews 13:10

### We have an altar (ULT) the sacred altar (UST)

Here “altar” stands for “place of worship.” It also stands for the animals that the priests in the old covenant sacrificed, from which they took meat for themselves and their families. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [an altar](#)
- [the right](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [who serve](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [the sacred altar](#)
- [right](#)
- [sacred tent](#)
- [serve](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> We have [an altar](#) from which those [who serve](#) in the [tabernacle](#) do not have [the right](#) to eat.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Those who [serve](#) in the [sacred tent](#) have no [right](#) to eat at [the sacred altar](#) where we worship the Messiah.

## Hebrews 13:11

**that are killed...the blood of the animals...for sins is brought by the high priest into the holy place (ULT)**  
**After...the high priest brings into the very holy place the blood of animals that they have sacrificed to atone...sins (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the high priest brings into the holy place the blood of the animals that the priests killed for sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**but their bodies are burned (ULT)**  
**other people burn the bodies of those animals (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "while the priests burn the animals' bodies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**outside the camp (ULT)**  
**outside the camp (UST)**

"away from where the people lived"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [bodies](#)
- [blood](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [of the animals](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [very holy place](#)
- [bodies](#)
- [blood](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [of animals](#)

### ULT

<sup>11</sup> For the [blood of the animals](#) that are killed for [sins](#) is brought by the [high priest](#) into the [holy place](#), but their [bodies](#) are burned outside the camp.

### UST

<sup>11</sup> After the [high priest](#) brings into the [very holy place](#) the [blood of animals](#) that they have sacrificed to atone for [sins](#), other people burn the [bodies](#) of those animals outside the camp.

## Hebrews 13:12

### Connecting Statement:

There is a comparison here between Jesus' sacrifice and the tabernacle sacrifices of the Old Testament.

### So (ULT)

### Similarly (UST)

"In the same way" or "Because the bodies of the sacrifices were burned outside the camp" ([Hebrews 13:11](#))

### outside...city gate...the (ULT)

### outside the gates of Jerusalem (UST)

This stands for "outside the city." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [blood](#)
- [sanctify](#)
- [people](#)
- [city gate](#)
- [suffered](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [offering...blood as a sacrifice for our sins](#)
- [he might make us, his...special for God. He did](#)
- [people](#)
- [gates of Jerusalem](#)
- [suffered...died](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So [Jesus](#) also [suffered](#) outside the [city gate](#), in order to [sanctify](#) the [people](#) through his own [blood](#).

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Similarly, [Jesus suffered](#) and [died](#) outside the [gates of Jerusalem](#) in order that [he might make us, his people, special for God. He did](#) this by [offering](#) his own [blood as a sacrifice for our sins](#).

## Hebrews 13:13

**Let us therefore go to him outside the camp (ULT)  
So we must go to Jesus to be saved. We must leave  
behind other rules and rituals (UST)**

Obedying Jesus is spoken of as if a person were leaving the camp to go out where Jesus is. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**bearing his shame (ULT)  
and allow others to insult us just like people insulted  
him (UST)**

Disgrace is spoken of as if it were an object that had to be carried in one's hands or on one's back. Alternate translation: "while allowing others to insult us just like people insulted him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [shame](#)
- [bearing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [just like people insulted](#)
- [and allow others to insult us](#)

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Let us therefore go to him outside the camp, [bearing](#) his [shame](#).

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> So we must go to Jesus to be saved. We must leave behind other rules and rituals [and allow others to insult us just like people insulted](#) him.

## Hebrews 13:14

**we are looking for (ULT)**  
**we are waiting (UST)**

“waiting for”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [we are looking for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [we are waiting](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> For we do not have a permanent city here. Instead, [we are looking for](#) one that is to come.

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> Here on earth, we believers do not have a city such as Jerusalem. Instead, [we are waiting](#) for the heavenly city that will last forever.



## Hebrews 13:15

### a sacrifice of praise (ULT)

**we must continually praise...That will be something we can sacrifice (UST)**

Praise is spoken of as if it were a sacrifice of animals or incense. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of praise...that is, the fruit of lips (ULT)

**we must continually praise...instead of animals. We must be ready (UST)**

Praise is spoken of as if it were fruit produced by the lips of people. Alternate translation: “praise that is produced by the lips of those who acknowledge his name” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### of lips that acknowledge his name (ULT)

**instead of animals. We must be ready...openly say to others that we trust in the Messiah (UST)**

Here “lips” represents people who speak. Alternate translation: “the lips of those who acknowledge his name” or “those who acknowledge his name” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### his name (ULT)

**in the Messiah (UST)**

A person's name represents that person. Alternate translation: “him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- that acknowledge
- name
- the fruit
- a sacrifice
- of praise

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- openly say to others that we trust
- in...Messiah
- instead of animals. We must be ready
- That will be something we can sacrifice
- we must continually praise

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Through him, let us always offer up [a sacrifice of praise to God](#), that is, [the fruit](#) of lips [that acknowledge](#) his [name](#).

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Because Jesus has died for us, [we must continually praise God](#) no matter what happens. [That will be something we can sacrifice](#) to him [instead of animals. We must be ready](#) to [openly say to others that we trust](#) in the [Messiah](#).

## Hebrews 13:16

**But...let us not neglect doing good and sharing (ULT)  
the...Always...be doing good deeds for others...and  
sharing...things you have (UST)**

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Let us always remember to do good and help others" (See: [Litotes](#))

**with such...sacrifices (ULT)  
doing things like that...will be as though you are  
offering sacrifices (UST)**

Doing good and helping others is spoken of as if they were sacrifices on an altar. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sharing](#)
- [God](#)
- [doing good](#)
- [sacrifices](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sharing...things you have](#)
- [God](#)
- [be doing good deeds for others](#)
- [will be as though you are offering sacrifices](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> But let us not neglect [doing good](#) and [sharing](#), for [God](#) is pleased with such [sacrifices](#).

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> Always [be doing good deeds for others](#) and [sharing](#) the [things you have](#), because doing things like that [will be as though you are offering sacrifices](#) that will please [God](#).

## Hebrews 13:17

**keep watch over your souls (ULT)**  
**your...they are the ones who are guarding...welfare (UST)**

The believers' souls, that is, the believers' spiritual well-being, are spoken of as if they were objects or animals that guards could keep watch over. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**not with groaning (ULT)**  
**not...sadly...if you cause them to do...sadly (UST)**

Here "groaning" stands for sadness or grief. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [souls](#)
- [submit to them](#)
- [Obey](#)
- [account](#)
- [joy](#)
- [as](#)
- [keep watch](#)
- [with groaning](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [welfare](#)
- [do...tell you](#)
- [Obey](#)
- [say](#)
- [they can do the work of guarding you joyfully](#)
- [Some day they will have to stand before God so that he can](#)
- [they are...ones who are guarding](#)
- [sadly...if you cause them to do...sadly](#)

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> [Obey](#) your leaders and [submit to them](#), for they [keep watch](#) over your [souls](#), [as](#) those who will give [account](#). Obey so that your leaders may do this with [joy](#), and not [with groaning](#), for that would be useless to you.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> [Obey](#) your leaders and do what they [tell you](#), since [they are](#) the [ones who are guarding](#) your [welfare](#). [Some day they will have to stand before God so that he can say](#) if he approves of what they have done. Obey them in order that [they can do the work of guarding you joyfully](#) and not have to do it [sadly](#), because [if you cause them to do](#) it [sadly](#), that will certainly not help you at all.

## Hebrews 13:18

### Connecting Statement:

The author closes with a blessing and greetings.

### Pray for us (ULT)

### Pray...me and those with me (UST)

Here “us” refers to the author and his companions, but not to the readers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

**we are persuaded...that we have a clean conscience (ULT)**

**I am certain...that I have not done anything that displeases God. I have (UST)**

Here “clean” stands for being free from guilt. Alternate translation: “we are certain that we have no guilt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [a...conscience](#)
- [clean](#)
- [Pray](#)
- [we are persuaded](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I have not done anything that displeases God](#)
- [I have not done anything that displeases God](#)
- [Pray](#)
- [I am certain](#)

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> [Pray](#) for us, for [we are persuaded](#) that we have a [clean conscience](#) and that we desire to live rightly in all things.

### UST

<sup>18</sup> [Pray](#) for me and those with me. [I am certain](#) that [I have not done anything that displeases God](#). I have tried to act well toward you in every way.

## Hebrews 13:19

**so that I will be returned to you sooner (ULT)**  
**God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [I encourage you](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [I urge you](#)

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But [I encourage you](#) even more to do this, so that I will be returned to you sooner.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> [I urge you](#) earnestly to pray that God will quickly remove the things that stop my coming to you.

## Hebrews 13:20

### Now may (ULT) and (UST)

This marks a new section of the letter. Here the author praises God and gives a final prayer for his readers.

### brought back from the dead the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus

“raised the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus, to life”

### from the dead (ULT)

### from...dead...when...died on...cross (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To raise someone from among them speaks of causing that person to become alive again.

### the great shepherd of the sheep...the (ULT)

### Jesus provides for us, protects us...guides us as a great shepherd does for his sheep. And... who...the...the...Messiah (UST)

Christ in his role of leader and protector of those who believe in him is spoken of as if he were a shepherd of sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### by...blood of the eternal covenant (ULT)

### By doing that God confirmed his eternal covenant with us by...blood that flowed from (UST)

Here “blood” stands for the death of Jesus, which is the basis for the covenant that will last forever between God and all believers in Christ. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- eternal
- Jesus
- Lord
- God
- blood
- of the...covenant
- shepherd
- the dead
- of peace
- sheep

### Translation Words - UST

- eternal
- Jesus
- Lord
- God
- blood that flowed from

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Now may the [God of peace](#), who brought back from [the dead](#) the great [shepherd](#) of the [sheep](#), our [Lord Jesus](#), by the [blood of the eternal covenant](#),

### UST

<sup>20</sup> [Jesus provides for us, protects us](#), and guides us as a great shepherd [does for his sheep](#). And [God](#), who [gives us inner peace](#), raised our [Lord Jesus](#) from the dead. [By doing that God confirmed his eternal covenant](#) with us by the [blood that flowed from](#) the Messiah [when he died on the cross](#).

- By doing that God confirmed his...covenant
- Jesus provides for us, protects us
- when...died on...cross
- gives us inner peace
- does for his sheep

## Hebrews 13:21

### equip you with everything good to do his will

“give you every good thing you need in order to do his will “make you capable of doing every good thing according to his will”

### working in us (ULT)

### I...May he accomplish in us (UST)

The word “us” refers to the author and the readers. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### in order...to whom be the glory...forever...and ever (ULT)

### So...that...him...May all people praise...forever (UST)

“whom all people will praise forever”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus Christ](#)
- [Amen](#)
- [glory](#)
- [his...will](#)
- [good](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [forever](#)
- [and ever](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [follow Jesus, who offered up himself...Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [Amen](#)
- [May all people praise](#)
- [what...he...desires](#)
- [good](#)
- [Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [forever](#)
- [forever](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> equip you with everything [good](#) in order to do [his will](#), working in us what is pleasing to him, through [Jesus Christ](#), to whom be the [glory forever and ever](#). [Amen](#).

### UST

<sup>21</sup> So I pray that God may equip you with everything [good](#) that you may do [what he desires](#). May he accomplish in us what pleases him, as he watches us [follow Jesus, who offered up himself](#) for us. [May all people praise Jesus the Messiah forever](#). [Amen!](#)



## Hebrews 13:22

### Now (ULT)

### that (UST)

This marks a new section of the letter. Here the author gives his final comments to his audience.

### brothers (ULT)

### My fellow believers (UST)

This refers to all the believers to whom he is writing whether male or female. Alternate translation: “fellow believers” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

### to bear with the word of encouragement (ULT)

### this...that...patiently consider what I have just written...encourage (UST)

“patiently consider what I have just written to encourage you”

### the word of encouragement (ULT)

### this...that...what I have just written...encourage (UST)

Here “word” stands for a message. Alternate translation: “the encouraging message” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [I encourage](#)
- [of encouragement](#)
- [to bear with](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [My fellow believers](#)
- [I ask you](#)
- [encourage](#)
- [patiently consider](#)

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Now [I encourage](#) you, [brothers](#), [to bear with](#) the word [of encouragement](#), for only in a few words I have written to you.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> [My fellow believers](#), since this is a short letter that I have written to you, [I ask you](#) that you [patiently consider](#) what I have just written to [encourage](#) you.

## Hebrews 13:23

**has been set free (ULT)**

**has gone free from prison (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “is no longer in prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [Know that](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fellow believer](#)
- [Timothy](#)
- [I want you to know that](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> [Know that](#) our [brother Timothy](#) has been set free, with whom I will see you if he comes soon.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> [I want you to know that](#) our [fellow believer Timothy](#) has gone free from prison. If he comes here soon, he will accompany me when I go to see you.

## Hebrews 13:24

**Those from Italy greet you (ULT)**  
**that I greet them. The believers in this area who have**  
**come from Italy greet you also (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) the author is not in Italy, but there is a group of believers with him who have come from Italy or 2) the author is in Italy while writing this letter.

**Italy (ULT)**

**The believers in...Italy (UST)**

This is the name of a region at that time. Rome was the then-capital city of Italy. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [saints](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [believers who belong to God in your city](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Greet all your leaders and all the [saints](#). Those from Italy greet you.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Tell all your spiritual leaders and all your other fellow [believers who belong to God in your city](#) that I greet them. The believers in this area who have come from Italy greet you also.

## Hebrews 13:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [May grace](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [kindness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> [May grace](#) be with you all.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> May God continue to love you and protect you by his [kindness](#).



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 12**

## Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

### Examples from the Bible

...from **\*childhood\*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

**But** godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.  
But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.  
But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

**Today** salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...  
Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

**The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider** slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

**He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the** purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: Hebrews 1:3; 2:3; 2:14; 3:1; 3:6; 3:8; 3:13; 3:15; 3:19; 4:11; 5:9; 6:9; 7:24; 9:2; 10:9; 10:10; 10:18; 10:23; 10:35; 11:9; 11:11; 11:26; 11:35; 11:36; 12:8; 12:14; 12:17; 12:27)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)



This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

**It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:12](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:18](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [4:9](#); [4:13](#); [4:15](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:7](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:18](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:13](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:28](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [9:2](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [9:18](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [9:28](#); [10:2](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:22](#); [10:29](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:16](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:29](#); [11:30](#); [11:34](#); [11:35](#); [11:36](#); [11:37](#); [11:39](#); [11:40](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#); [13:19](#); [13:23](#))

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

**it will be more tolerable for** Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.  
or:  
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

**Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

**it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:2](#); [2:11](#); [6:11](#); [7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:20](#); [7:25](#); [8:5](#); [9:4](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:17](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [10:28](#); [10:37](#); [11:2](#); [11:22](#); [11:26](#); [11:28](#); [11:35](#); [12:18](#); [12:24](#); [12:25](#); [13:6](#))

## Connecting Words and Phrases

### Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to connect parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences.

Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting Words and Phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

**Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

### Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

### The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the

right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary to Fact Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship – a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- Contrast Relationship – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

## Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, **but** instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that **contrasts** with what was said before. The **contrast** here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a **sequence** of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

**Therefore** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the **reason** for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” **contrasts** what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, **for** we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. **Instead**, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the **reason** for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” **contrasts** what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

## General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

**Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men."**  
**Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus **because** he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so".

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men." **So** immediately they left the nets and went after him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

**Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and**

teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

**I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but**

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "but" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore



whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

**Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.  
**And** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:28](#))

# Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

## Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

## Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

**He instructed him to tell no one, but told him,** “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

**He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:11](#))

## Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

### Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could **distinguish this sister** of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about **how Mary’s sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

### Examples from the Bible

**Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:** These usually do not cause any problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33 ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

**Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:** These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

...for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, **who is ninety years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

## Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

**I hate those who serve** worthless

idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

**Because** idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

...for **your righteous**

judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

...for your judgments are good **because** they are righteous.

**Can Sarah**, who is ninety years old

, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Can Sarah bear a son **even when** she is ninety years old?

**I will call on Yahweh**, who is worthy to be praised

(2 Samuel 22:4 ULT) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, **because** he is worthy to be praised

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

■ **You are my Son**, whom I love

. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

■ You are my Son. ***I love you*** and I am pleased with you.  
***Receiving my love***, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\*Double Negatives\*](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:5](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

**...in order** not

to be unfruitful\*\*. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

**All things were made through him and** without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:8](#); [2:11](#); [4:2](#); [4:15](#); [6:10](#); [7:20](#); [9:7](#); [9:18](#); [9:22](#); [11:6](#); [12:14](#); [12:25](#))



# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:2](#); [4:13](#); [5:7](#); [6:19](#); [8:5](#); [8:11](#); [10:17](#); [11:13](#); [12:28](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***  
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

## There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples from the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort,***...  
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

## Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

**He makes Lebanon skip like a calf** and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:6](#); [5:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:14](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”  
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

■ Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

■ **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

■ "they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:14](#); [11:22](#); [13:4](#))

# Exclamations

## Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

## Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

## Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

**You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

"You **are** such a worthless person!"

**Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word "wow" below shows that they were astonished. The expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

**They were absolutely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak."** (Mark 7:36 ULT)

"They were absolutely astonished, saying, '**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

**Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"  
**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

**How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

"His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

**Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah**

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

"Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:9](#))

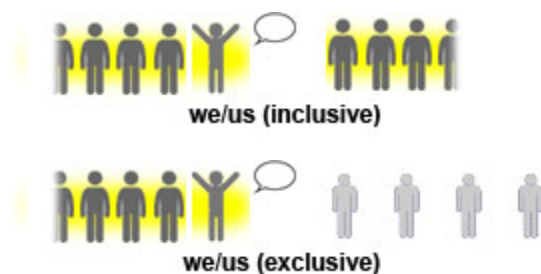


## Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

### Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\*When Masculine Words Include Women\*](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:1; 13:18](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:9](#); [10:5](#); [12:1](#); [12:25](#))

## Generic Noun Phrases

### Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?

So is **the man who goes into his neighbor's wife**;

**the one who has relations with her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

### Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

The **one who does what is right** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell them grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

### Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man

, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans.**”  
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

**People curse** the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:7](#); [2:8](#); [9:9](#); [10:38](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

**Saul** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

**You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

**Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

**She named him** Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

**...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**<sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

**It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:



[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hebrews](#); [Hebrews 7:1](#); [11:32](#); [13:24](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

**I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

**Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:6](#); [2:14](#); [12:9](#))

# Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

## Description

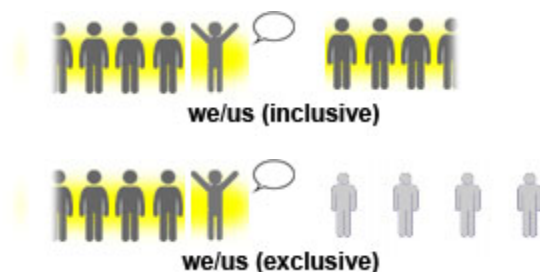
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

## Examples from the Bible

### Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

### Exclusive

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:1](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#); [7:15](#); [8:1](#); [10:30](#); [12:1](#); [12:25](#); [13:21](#))

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

**For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

**Now when it became day, there was** no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:16](#); [12:5](#); [13:2](#); [13:16](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)



a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

### Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

**It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

**Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: Hebrews 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:6; 1:7; 1:9; 1:10; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 2:1; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; Notes; 3:1; 3:2; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:18; 4:1; 4:3; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:9; 4:10; 4:11; 4:12; 4:13; 4:14; 4:16; Notes; 5:2; 5:4; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 6:1; 6:2; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:8; 6:12; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:18; 7:19; 7:26; 8:5; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; Notes; 9:9; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:22; 9:26; 9:28; 10:1; 10:2; 10:4; 10:9; 10:11; 10:13; 10:16; 10:19; 10:20; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 10:25; 10:26; 10:27; 10:29; 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 10:34; 10:35; 10:39; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:7; 11:8; 11:9; 11:13; 11:26; 11:33; 11:34; 12:1; 12:2; 12:4; 12:8; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 12:15; 12:22; 12:23; 12:25; 12:29; 13:9; 13:13; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 13:20)

# Metonymy

## Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hebrews](#); [Hebrews 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:8](#); [1:10](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:12](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [3:15](#); [4:7](#); [4:12](#); [4:16](#); [5:4](#); [5:7](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [6:5](#); [6:10](#); [6:14](#); [7:16](#); [7:28](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [9:5](#); [9:8](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:28](#); [10:4](#); [10:16](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [11:7](#); [11:10](#); [11:18](#); [11:28](#); [11:33](#); [11:34](#); [11:38](#); [11:39](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#); [12:19](#); [12:24](#); [13:4](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [13:17](#); [13:20](#); [13:22](#))

# Nominal Adjectives

## Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

**He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

## Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

**The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of** the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]



█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

**Blessed are** the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:35](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:10; 3:17; 11:30](#))

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.  
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

**A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four**

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:4](#); [8:7](#); [9:3](#); [10:9](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.  
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

## Examples from the Bible

### (1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

### (2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

### (3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

#### (4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

### Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

**Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

**For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”



(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:5](#); [2:6](#); [5:5](#))

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:12](#); [6:7](#); [6:19](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [11:29](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:11](#); [12:24](#))

# Pronouns

## Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]*

## Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself**

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:11](#); [6:9](#); [6:11](#); [8:1](#); [9:5](#))

# Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

**Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? ***None of you would do that!***

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

***This is what the kingdom of God is like.*** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

***You should not insult God's high priest!***

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

***I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!***

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

***How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!***

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, ***do you not?***

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

**Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, ***would you give him a stone?***

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

***What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:5](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [2:3](#); [2:6](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [3:18](#); [7:11](#); [9:14](#); [10:2](#); [10:29](#); [11:32](#); [12:7](#); [13:6](#))



# Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

**For the word of God is living and active and sharper** than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

**If you have faith even as small** as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings  
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [11:12](#); [11:27](#); [12:7](#))

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

**Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

**Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hebrews](#); [Hebrews 1:3](#); [1:13](#); [8:1](#); [9:19](#); [9:21](#); [10:12](#); [10:22](#); [12:2](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example from the Bible

■ I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ “My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

■ “I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

■ ...**a representative of the Pharisees** said to him...

...**I looked on all the deeds that** my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:11](#); [9:24](#); [10:39](#); [13:15](#))

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup> [Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup> She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup> The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.



<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup><sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup><sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to Hebrews](#))

# Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

## Biblical Witness

**“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.**

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

**...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son.** (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created.**” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, **the very character of his essence.** He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod]]

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father**

and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#); [1:8](#); [3:6](#); [4:14](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [6:6](#); [7:28](#); [10:29](#))

## When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

### Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says **‘brothers’** when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes **his** father rejoice  
but a foolish child brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

### Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

### Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, **brothers**, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution:** Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a **man** dies, having no children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have a child for **his brother**.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[Generic Noun Phrases](#)

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

**The wise man**

dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”  
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

**For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers**

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

**If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.**  
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:11; 3:1; 3:12; 10:19; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 13:6; 13:22](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 14**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:4](#); [7:11](#); [9:4](#))

# Abel

## Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G6

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:4](#); [12:24](#))



## Abraham, Abram

### Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:16](#); [6:13](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:9](#); [11:8](#); [11:17](#))

## adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

### Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), [sleep with](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:4](#))

## adversary, enemy

### Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:13](#); [10:13](#); [10:27](#))

## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, [suffer](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:36](#))

## age, aged

### Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G165, G1074

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#); [1:8](#); [5:6](#); [6:5](#); [6:20](#); [7:17](#); [7:21](#); [7:24](#); [7:28](#); [9:26](#); [13:8](#); [13:21](#))

## alien, foreign, foreigner

### Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:9](#); [11:34](#))

# altar

## Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:13; 13:10](#))

## amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

### Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#))



## amen, truly

### Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:21](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:1](#); [1:5](#); [3:9](#); [7:10](#); [8:9](#); [11:23](#); [12:7](#); [12:9](#))

## angel, archangel

### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:13](#); [2:2](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:16](#); [12:22](#); [13:2](#))

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, [high priest](#), King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:9](#))

## apostle, apostleship

### Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:1](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#); [3:2](#); [4:7](#); [5:1](#); [7:28](#); [8:3](#))

# ark

## Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:4](#); [11:7](#))



## ash, ashes

### Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word "dust" is used with the term "ashes" in the phrase, "dust and ashes." This phrase can be translated as "dust and ashes" or simply as "ashes."
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), sackcloth)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:13](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:12](#); [12:22](#))

## astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

### Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:10](#); [5:2](#))

## atonement lid

### Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, atonement, [cherubim](#), [propitiation](#), [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 25:17
- Exodus 30:06
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 07:89

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G2435

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:5](#))

# authority

## Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), ruler)

## Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:10](#))

## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:30](#))

## awe, awesome

### Definition:

The term “awe” refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term “awesome” describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were “awesome” or “awe-inspiring.”
- Typical human responses showing awe of God’s presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](#), [glory](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:21
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Hebrews 12:28
- Psalm 022:23
- Psalms 147:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H366, H1481, H3372, H6206, H7227, G2124

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:28](#))

## bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:20](#); [13:13](#); [13:22](#))



## beast

### Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, nation, [power](#), [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:20](#))

# believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

## Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), Christian, disciple, [faith](#), [trust](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:12](#); [3:19](#); [4:3](#); [11:6](#))

## beloved

### Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:9](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), vow)

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:36](#); [13:3](#))

## birthright

### Definition:

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [descendant](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:01
- Genesis 25:34
- Genesis 43:33
- Hebrews 12:14-17

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1062, G4415

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:16](#))

# blameless

## Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:7](#); [9:14](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.



- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:7](#); [6:14](#); [7:1](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [12:17](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:14](#); [9:7](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:25](#); [10:4](#); [10:19](#); [10:29](#); [11:28](#); [12:4](#); [12:24](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:20](#))

## boast, boastful

### Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one’s work, family, or country.

### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: proud)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1740, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:6](#))

## body

### Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:17](#); [10:5](#); [10:10](#); [10:22](#); [13:3](#); [13:11](#))

## **bold, boldness, emboldened**

### **Definition:**

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: [confidence](#), good news, [redeem](#))

### **Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:28
- 1 Thessalonians 02:1-2
- 2 Corinthians 03:12-13
- Acts 04:13

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H982, H5797, G662, G2292, G3618, G3954, G3955, G5111, G5112

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:16](#))

# bread

## Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:2](#))

# brother

## Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:12](#); [7:5](#); [8:11](#); [10:19](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#))



## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:6](#); [10:8](#))

# Cain

## Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Adam, [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Genesis 04:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 01:11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G2535

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:4](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:11](#); [3:1](#); [3:13](#); [5:4](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:15](#); [11:8](#); [11:16](#); [11:24](#))

## cherub

### Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [angel](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:06
- 1 Kings 06:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Genesis 03:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:5](#))

## children, child, offspring

### Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  - children of the light
  - children of obedience
  - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:13](#); [2:14](#); [5:13](#); [11:23](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:25](#))



# Christ, Messiah

## Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:6](#); [3:14](#); [5:5](#); [6:1](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [9:24](#); [9:28](#); [10:10](#); [11:26](#); [13:8](#); [13:21](#))

## church, Church

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), Christian)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:23](#))

## **citizen, citizenship**

### **Definition:**

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God’s kingdom.

(See: [kingdom](#), Paul, province, Rome)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 21:39-40
- Isaiah 03:03
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:11](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#); [9:14](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:2](#); [10:22](#))

## clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

### Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

### Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:11](#); [1:12](#))



## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, [law](#), Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:5](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [11:3](#); [11:23](#); [12:20](#))

## companion, fellow worker, friend

### Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 01:09
- Proverbs 02:17
- Psalms 038:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G4898, G4904

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:9](#))

## compassion, compassionate

### Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

### Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:34](#))

## conceive, conception

### Definition:

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), womb)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G1722, G2845, G4815

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:11](#))

## condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:7](#))

## confess, confession

### Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:1](#); [4:14](#); [10:23](#); [11:13](#); [13:15](#))

## confidence, confident

### Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULT often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe](#), [bold](#), [faithful](#), [hope](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:6](#); [3:14](#); [6:9](#); [10:19](#); [10:35](#); [13:6](#); [13:18](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:3](#); [13:9](#))



## conscience

### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:19
- 1 Timothy 03:09
- 2 Corinthians 05:11
- 2 Timothy 01:03
- Romans 09:01
- Titus 01:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4893

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:9](#); [9:14](#); [10:2](#); [10:22](#); [13:18](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:29](#))

## **courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement**

### **Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

### **Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:13](#); [6:18](#); [10:25](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6 General Notes](#); [7:22](#); [Notes](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [Notes](#); [9:4](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:20](#); [Notes](#); [10:16](#); [10:29](#); [12:24](#); [13:20](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:12](#); [9:19](#))

## create, created, creation, creator

### Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), good news, [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:3](#); [9:11](#); [9:26](#))



## creature, creation

### Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 04:10-12
- Ezekiel 01:09
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G2226, G2937, G2938

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:13](#); [13:11](#))

## **cross**

### **Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [crucify](#), Rome)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

### **Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:2](#))

## crown, crowned

### Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Paul calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

### Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:7; 2:9](#))

## crucify, crucified

### Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **43:09** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:6](#))

## cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

### Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:13](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:8](#))

## curtain

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, [tabernacle](#), temple)

### Bible References: ##

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 04:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 04:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:19](#); [9:3](#); [10:20](#))



# darkness

## Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, [kingdom](#), light, [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:18](#))

# David

## Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:7](#); [11:32](#))

# day

## Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, [last day](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#); [3:8](#); [3:13](#); [4:4](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [5:7](#); [7:3](#); [7:27](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:16](#); [10:25](#); [10:32](#); [11:30](#); [12:10](#))

## deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

### Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:13](#))

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:3](#); [2:12](#))

## dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

### Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Kings 07:51
- 1 Timothy 04:05
- 2 Chronicles 02:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 02:22-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:18](#); [10:20](#))

## defile, defiled

### Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:13](#); [12:15](#))

# delight

## Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:38](#))



## descend, descendant

### Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:16](#); [11:18](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:8](#); [3:17](#); [11:38](#))

# destroy, destruction, annihilate

## Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

## Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:14](#); [11:28](#))

# devour

## Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:27](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death,

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:9](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [5:7](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [7:8](#); [7:23](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:27](#); [10:28](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [11:35](#); [11:37](#); [13:20](#))

## discern, discernment, distinguish

### Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 01:05
- Psalms 019:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G350, G1252, G1253, G2924

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:14](#))

## discipline, self-discipline

### Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 06:4
- Hebrews 12:05
- Proverbs 19:18
- Proverbs 23:13-14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4148, G1468

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#))



## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:2](#); [3:18](#); [4:6](#); [4:11](#); [11:31](#))

# divine

## Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
- In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
- For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
- The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), false god, [glory](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 01:04
- Romans 01:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2304, G2999

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:5](#))

## doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

### Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, G1319, G1322, G2085

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:9](#))

## earth, earthen, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:10](#); [8:4](#); [9:1](#); [11:13](#); [11:38](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#))

# Egypt, Egyptian

## Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, [patriarchs](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:16](#); [8:9](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [11:29](#))

## endure, endurance

### Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:32](#); [10:36](#); [11:27](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:3](#); [12:7](#))

# Enoch

## Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), Seth)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:03
- Genesis 05:18-20
- Genesis 05:24
- Jude 01:14
- Luke 03:36-38

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G1802

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:5](#))

## envy, covet

### Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:5](#))



## Esau

### Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Edom, [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), Rebekah)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:05
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 09:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **07:02** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **07:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:20](#); [12:16](#))

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:9](#); [6:2](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#); [13:20](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:12](#); [5:14](#); [10:22](#))

## ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:20](#))

## exhort, exhortation

### Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 1 Timothy 05:02
- Luke 03:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12 General Notes](#); [12:5](#); [13:19](#); [13:22](#))

## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:13](#))



## exult, exultant

### Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:03
- Job 06:10
- Psalm 068:1-3
- Zephaniah 02:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:9](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:24](#))

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:2](#); [6:1](#); [6:12](#); [Notes](#); [10:22](#); [10:38](#); [10:39](#); [11:1](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:13](#); [11:17](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [11:30](#); [11:31](#); [11:33](#); [11:39](#); [12:2](#); [13:7](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:17](#); [3:2](#); [3:5](#); [Notes](#); [10:23](#); [11:11](#))

## fear, afraid, dread

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: [marvel](#), [awe](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:15](#); [4:1](#); [10:31](#); [11:23](#); [11:27](#); [12:21](#); [13:6](#))

# fellowship

## Definition:

In general, the term “fellowship” refers to friendly interactions between members of a group of people who share similar interests and experiences.

- In the Bible, the term “fellowship” usually refers to the unity of believers in Christ.
- Christian fellowship is a shared relationship that believers have with one another through their relationship with Christ and the Holy Spirit.
- The early Christians expressed their fellowship through listening to the teaching of God’s Word and praying together, through the sharing of their belongings, and through eating meals together.
- Christians also have fellowship with God through their faith in Jesus and his sacrificial death on the cross which removed the barrier between God and people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “fellowship” could include “a sharing together” or “relationship” or “companionship” or “Christian community.”

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- Philippians 01:3-6
- Philippians 02:01
- Philippians 03:10
- Psalms 055:12-14

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2266, H8667, G2842, G2844, G3352, G4790

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:16](#))

## fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:7](#); [10:27](#); [11:34](#); [12:18](#); [12:29](#))



## firstborn

### Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:6](#); [11:28](#); [12:23](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:14](#); [5:7](#); [7:16](#); [9:10](#); [9:13](#); [10:20](#); [12:9](#))

## footstool

### Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:13](#); [10:13](#))

## forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

### Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

**Word Data:**

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:22](#); [10:18](#))

## **forsake, forsaken, leave**

### **Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:5](#))

## found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, [create](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:10](#); [4:3](#); [6:1](#); [9:26](#); [11:10](#))

## free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

### Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:15](#))



## fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

### Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), grain, grape, [Holy Spirit](#), vine, womb)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:11](#); [13:15](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:12](#))

# generation

## Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

## Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:10](#))

# Gideon

## Facts:

Gideon was an Israelite man whom God raised up to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

- During the time when Gideon lived, a people group called the Midianites kept attacking the Israelites and destroying their crops.
- Even though Gideon was afraid, God used him to lead the Israelites to fight against the Midianites and defeat them.
- Gideon also obeyed God by taking down altars to the false gods Baal and Asherah.
- He not only led the people in defeating their enemies but also encouraged them to obey and worship Yahweh, the one true God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Baal, Asherah, deliver, Midian, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 06:11
- Judges 06:23
- Judges 08:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:05** The angel of Yahweh came to **Gideon** and said, "God is with you, mighty warrior. Go and save Israel from the Midianites."
- **16:06** **Gideon's** father had an altar dedicated to an idol. God told **Gideon** to tear down that altar.
- **16:08** There were so many of them (Midianites) that they could not be counted. **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them.
- **16:08** **Gideon** called the Israelites together to fight them. **Gideon** asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **16:10** 32,000 Israelite soldiers came to **Gideon**, but God told him this was too many.
- **16:12** Then **Gideon** returned to his soldiers and gave each of them a horn, a clay pot, and a torch.
- **16:15** The people wanted to make **Gideon** their king.
- **16:16** Then **Gideon** used the gold to make a special garment like the high priest used to wear. But the people started worshiping it as if it were an idol.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1439, H1441

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:32](#))

# gift

## Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:1](#); [6:4](#); [8:3](#); [8:4](#); [9:9](#); [11:4](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), [majesty](#), [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glorify** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#); [2:7](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [3:3](#); [5:5](#); [9:5](#); [13:21](#))



## goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

### Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), wine)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:13](#); [9:19](#); [10:4](#))

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), false god, [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), false god, [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:1](#); [1:6](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [2:4](#); [2:9](#); [2:13](#); [2:17](#); [3:4](#); [3:12](#); [4:4](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [5:1](#); [5:4](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:10](#); [6:13](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [8:10](#); [9:14](#); [9:20](#); [9:24](#); [10:7](#); [10:12](#); [10:21](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [10:36](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:10](#); [11:16](#); [11:19](#); [11:25](#); [11:40](#); [12:2](#); [12:7](#); [12:15](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#); [12:28](#); [12:29](#); [13:4](#); [13:7](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:20](#))

## God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

### Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:08** “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”
- **50:10** “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:5](#); [12:9](#))

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, false god, silver, [tabernacle](#), temple)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:4](#))

## good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.



- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:14](#); [6:5](#); [9:11](#); [10:1](#); [10:24](#); [12:10](#); [13:9](#); [13:16](#); [13:18](#); [13:21](#))

## grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:9](#); [4:16](#); [10:29](#); [12:15](#); [12:28](#); [13:9](#); [13:25](#))

## groan, groans, groanings

### Definition:

The term to “groan” refers to the uttering of a deep, low sound that is caused by physical or emotional distress. It could also be the sound someone makes without any words.

- A person can groan because of feeling grief.
- Groaning can be caused by feeling a terrible, oppressive burden.
- Other ways to translate “groan” could include, “give a low cry of pain” or “grieve deeply.”
- As a noun, this could be translated as, “a low cry of distress” or “a deep murmur of pain.”

(See also: cry)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:02
- Hebrews 13:17
- Job 23:02
- Psalms 032:3-4
- Psalms 102:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H584, H585, H602, H603, H1901, H1993, H5008, H5009, H5098, H5594, H7581, G4726, G4727, G4959

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:17](#))

## guilt, guilty

### Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:9](#))

# had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with

## Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- The expression “sleep with” someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book “Song of Solomon,” the ULT uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression “make love to.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: [sexual immorality](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:1-2
- 1 Samuel 01:19
- Deuteronomy 21:13
- Genesis 19:05
- Matthew 01:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H160, H935, H1540, H2181, H2233, H3045, H3212, H6172, H7250, H7901, H7903, G1097

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:4](#))

# hand

## Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:10](#); [6:2](#); [8:9](#); [10:31](#); [12:12](#))

## hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:8](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [4:7](#))



# heart

## Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [3:15](#); [4:7](#); [4:12](#); [8:10](#); [10:16](#); [10:22](#); [13:9](#))

# heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

## Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

## Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:10](#); [3:1](#); [4:14](#); [6:4](#); [7:26](#); [8:1](#); [8:5](#); [9:23](#); [9:24](#); [11:12](#); [11:16](#); [12:22](#); [12:23](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#))

# heir

## Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#); [6:17](#); [11:7](#))

## high priest, chief priests

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [priest](#), temple)

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.

- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:17](#); [3:1](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [5:1](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [6:20](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [7:28](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [9:7](#); [9:11](#); [9:25](#); [13:11](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#); [3:7](#); [6:4](#); [9:8](#); [9:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:29](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38



- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [6:4](#); [7:26](#); [8:2](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:8](#); [9:12](#); [9:24](#); [9:25](#); [Notes](#); [10:15](#); [10:19](#); [12:10](#); [12:14](#); [13:11](#))

# honor

## Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [praise](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:7](#); [2:9](#); [3:3](#); [5:4](#); [13:4](#))

## hope, hoped

### Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [confidence](#), [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:6](#); [6:11](#); [6:18](#); [7:19](#); [10:23](#); [11:1](#))

# house

## Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), temple, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [10:21](#))

# house of God, Yahweh's house

## Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), temple)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:21](#))

# household

## Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:7](#))

## imitate, imitator

### Definition:

The terms “imitate” and “imitator” refers to copying someone else by acting exactly like that person does.

- Christians are taught to imitate Jesus Christ by obeying God and loving others, just as Jesus did.
- The apostle Paul told the early church to imitate him, just as he imitated Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “imitate” could be translated as “do the same things as” or “follow his example.”
- The expression “be imitators of God” could be translated as “be people who act like God does” or “be people who do the kinds of things God does.”
- “You became imitators of us” could be translated as “You followed our example” or “You are doing the same kinds of godly things that you saw us do.”

### Bible References:

- 3 John 01:11
- Matthew 23:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H310, H6213, G1096, G2596, G3401, G3402, G4160

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:12](#); [13:7](#))

# incense

## Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, [burnt offering](#), frankincense)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:04
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:4](#))



## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), Canaan, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:4](#); [1:14](#); [6:12](#); [9:15](#); [11:8](#); [12:17](#))

# iniquity

## Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:12](#))

# innocent

## Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:26](#))

## **instruct, instruction, instructors**

### **Facts:**

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

### **Bible References:**

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:22](#))

## intercede, intercession

### Definition:

The terms “intercede” and “intercession” refer to making requests to someone on behalf of another person. In the Bible this usually refers to praying for other people.

- The expressions “make intercession for” and “intercede for” mean to make requests to God for the benefit of other people.
- The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit intercedes for us, that is, he prays to God for us.
- A person intercedes for other people by making requests for them to someone in authority.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “intercede” could include “plead for” or “urge (someone) to do something (for someone else).”
- The noun “intercessions” could be translated as “appeals” or “requests” or “urgent prayers.”
- The phrase “make intercession for” could be translated as “make requests for the benefit of” or “make an appeal on behalf of” or “ask God to help” or “appeal to God to bless (someone).”

(See also: [pray](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 07:25-26
- Isaiah 53:12
- Jeremiah 29:6-7
- Romans 08:26-27
- Romans 08:33-34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6293, G1783, G1793, G5241

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:25](#))

# Isaac

## Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:9](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#))

## Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:9](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:8](#); [8:10](#); [11:22](#))



## it is written

### Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G1125

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:7](#))

# Jephthah

## Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

- In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
- He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
- Jephthah however, made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in the sacrifice of his daughter.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ammon, deliver, Ephraim, [judge](#), vow)

## Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 11:1-3
- Judges 11:35
- Judges 12:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3316

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:32](#))

# Jericho

## Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:30](#))

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, [Jesus](#), Solomon, temple, [Zion](#))

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:22](#))

## Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:9](#); [3:1](#); [4:14](#); [6:20](#); [7:22](#); [10:10](#); [10:19](#); [12:2](#); [12:24](#); [13:8](#); [13:12](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#))

## Joseph (OT)

### Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:21](#); [11:22](#))

# Joshua

## Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:8](#))



## joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:34](#); [12:2](#); [12:11](#); [13:17](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:14; 8:8](#))

# judge

## Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, [judge](#), [law](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:23](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:12](#); [6:2](#); [9:27](#); [10:27](#); [10:30](#); [13:4](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:2](#))



## king, kingdom, kingship

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:1](#); [7:2](#); [11:23](#); [11:27](#))

# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:33](#))

## kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

### Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), King of the Jews, reign)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:02** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:8](#); [12:28](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:10](#); [5:2](#); [8:11](#); [10:26](#); [10:30](#); [10:34](#); [11:8](#); [12:17](#); [13:23](#))

# labor, laborer, work, hard work

## Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:33](#))

# lampstand

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

## Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, [gold](#), lamp, light, silver, temple)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:2](#))



## last day, latter days

### Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:02
- Isaiah 02:02
- James 05:03
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#))

## law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:5](#); [7:19](#); [7:28](#); [8:4](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [Notes](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [10:28](#))

## law, principle

### Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [decree](#), [command](#), [declare](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:12](#); [7:16](#); [8:10](#); [10:16](#))

## lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

### Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02

- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:9](#); [10:17](#))

## Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:5](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14



## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:15](#); [3:12](#); [4:12](#); [7:3](#); [7:8](#); [7:16](#); [7:25](#); [9:14](#); [9:17](#); [10:20](#); [10:31](#); [10:38](#); [12:9](#); [12:22](#))

## like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

### Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

### Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, image, [perish](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [2:17](#); [3:2](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [3:15](#); [4:3](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [5:3](#); [5:6](#); [6:19](#); [7:9](#); [7:15](#); [7:27](#); [8:5](#); [9:21](#); [9:25](#); [10:25](#); [11:9](#); [11:12](#); [11:27](#); [11:29](#); [12:5](#); [12:7](#); [12:16](#); [12:27](#); [13:3](#); [13:17](#))

## lion, lioness

### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [David](#), leopard, [Samson](#), [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 017:12
- Revelation 05:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:33](#))

## loins, waist

### Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), gird, offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:5](#); [7:10](#))

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), ruler, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:10](#); [2:3](#); [7:14](#); [7:21](#); [8:2](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [10:16](#); [10:30](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:14](#); [13:6](#); [13:20](#))

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
  - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
  - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
  - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
  - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
  - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:9](#); [6:10](#); [10:24](#); [12:6](#); [13:1](#))



# majesty

## Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- Daniel 04:36
- Isaiah 02:10
- Jude 01:25
- Micah 05:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#); [8:1](#))

# manna

## Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

## Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), grain, [heaven](#), [Sabbath](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:4](#))

# mediator

## Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: [priest](#), reconcile)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:05
- Galatians 03:20
- Hebrews 08:06
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 12:14

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3887, G3312, G3316

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:6](#); [9:15](#); [12:24](#))

# Melchizedek

## Facts:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later “Jerusalem”)

- Melchizedek’s name means “king of righteousness” and his title “king of Salem” means “king of peace.”
- He was also called a “priest of God Most High.”
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly “order of Melchizedek.” Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek’s was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [everlasting](#), [high priest](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Levite](#), [priest](#), [righteous](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 14:18
- Hebrews 06:20
- Hebrews 07:17
- Psalm 110:4

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4442, G3198

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:6](#); [5:10](#); [6:20](#); [7:1](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#))

## mercy, merciful

### Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:17](#); [4:16](#); [8:12](#); [10:28](#))

# might, mighty, mighty works

## Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:34](#))

## mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

### Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:10](#); [10:16](#))



## miracle, wonder, sign

### Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#))

## mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

### Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:33](#); [11:36](#))

## month, monthly

### Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:14](#))

# Moses

## Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:5](#); [3:16](#); [7:14](#); [8:5](#); [9:19](#); [10:28](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [12:21](#))

## Most High

### Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:35
- Luke 01:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5945, G5310

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:1](#))

## **multiply, multiplied, multiplication**

### **Definition:**

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 08:01
- Genesis 09:07
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 04:6-7

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:14](#))

# name

## Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

## Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:4](#); [2:12](#); [6:10](#); [11:18](#); [13:15](#))



# Noah

## Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [ark](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:08
- Genesis 08:01
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **03:04** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **03:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G3575

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:7](#))

## oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:11](#); [3:18](#); [4:3](#); [6:13](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [7:20](#); [7:21](#); [7:28](#))

## obey, obedient

### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *\_obeyed\_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:8](#); [5:9](#); [11:8](#); [13:17](#))

# oil

## Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:9](#))

## on high, in the highest

### Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree, ” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 01:13
- Psalms 069:29

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#))

## oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

### Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), enslave, persecute)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:37](#))

## ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

### Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), decree, [law](#), [law](#), [priest](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:03
- Psalms 111:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G1299, G2525, G4270, G4282

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:5](#); [11:3](#))

## ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

### Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordain](#), statute)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:1](#); [9:10](#))



# Passover

## Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:28](#))

## patient, patience, impatient

### Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), persevere)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:12](#))

# patriarch

## Definition:

The term “patriarch” in the Bible refers to someone who was a founding ancestor of the Jewish people, particularly Abraham, Isaac, or Jacob.

- It also can refer to the twelve sons of Jacob who became the twelve patriarchs of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The term “patriarch” has a similar meaning to “forefather,” but more specifically refers to the most well-known male ancestral leaders of a people group.

(See also: [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Acts 07:6-8
- Acts 07:09
- Ezra 03:12-13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H7218, G3966

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:4](#))

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:2](#); [11:31](#); [12:11](#); [12:14](#); [13:20](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:9](#); [8:10](#); [10:30](#); [11:25](#))

## people, people group,

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), nation, [tribe](#), [world](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:17](#); [4:9](#); [5:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:11](#); [7:27](#); [8:10](#); [9:7](#); [9:19](#); [11:25](#); [13:12](#))

## perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:10](#); [5:9](#); [5:14](#); [6:1](#); [7:11](#); [7:19](#); [7:28](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [10:1](#); [10:14](#); [11:40](#); [12:2](#); [12:23](#))



# perish

## Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

## Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God's people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:11](#); [11:31](#))

# Pharaoh, king of Egypt

## Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:13
- Acts 07:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:07
- Genesis 41:25

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** *that he is more powerful than* **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:24](#))

## possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

### Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:34](#))

## power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#); [2:14](#); [2:18](#); [5:7](#); [6:5](#); [7:16](#); [7:25](#); [9:9](#); [10:1](#); [10:11](#); [11:11](#); [11:19](#); [11:34](#))

## praise, praised, praiseworthy

### Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:15](#))

## pray, prayer

### Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, [forgive](#), [praise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:7](#); [13:18](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.



- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:2](#); [4:6](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:6](#); [7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:5](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:24](#); [8:4](#); [9:6](#); [10:11](#); [10:21](#))

# prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), demon, [lord](#), [power](#), ruler, [Satan](#), Savior, [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:10](#); [12:2](#))

## prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:34](#); [11:36](#))

## profane, profaned

### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), [clean](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:16](#))

## profit, profitable, unprofitable

### Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

### Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:2](#); [12:10](#); [13:9](#))

## promise, promised

### Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

### Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:1](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [7:6](#); [8:6](#); [9:15](#); [10:23](#); [10:36](#); [11:9](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:17](#); [11:33](#); [11:39](#); [12:26](#))



# prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

## Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:1](#); [Notes](#); [11:32](#))

# propitiation

## Definition:

The term “propitiation” refers to a sacrifice that is made to satisfy or fulfill the justice of God and to appease his wrath.

- The offering of the sacrificial blood of Jesus Christ is the propitiation to God for mankind’s sins.
- Jesus’ death on the cross appeased God’s wrath against sin. This provided a way for God to look on people with favor and offer them eternal life.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “appeasement” or “causing God to forgive sins and grant favor to people.”
- The word “atonement” is close in meaning to “propitiation.” It is important to compare how these two terms are used.

(See also: atonement, [everlasting](#), [forgive](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:10
- Romans 03:25-26

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2434, G2435

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:17](#))

## prostitute, harlot, whored

### Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, [sexual immorality](#), false god)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:31](#))

## prostrate, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:6](#); [9:1](#); [11:21](#))

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:29](#))

## pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:13](#))

## quench, quenched, unquenchable

### Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: [fruit](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 01:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:34](#))



# Rahab

## Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jericho](#), [prostitute](#))

## Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 02:25
- Joshua 02:21
- Joshua 06:17-19
- Matthew 01:05

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:05** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G4460

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:31](#))

## raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

### Definition:

#### raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

#### rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), exalt)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:11](#); [7:15](#); [11:19](#))

## rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), governor)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:8](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#))

# rebuke

## Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, [disobey](#))

## Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:5](#))

## receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

### Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [4:16](#); [7:5](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [9:15](#); [10:26](#); [10:34](#); [10:36](#); [11:8](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:17](#); [11:19](#); [11:29](#); [11:31](#); [11:35](#); [11:36](#); [11:39](#); [12:6](#); [12:28](#))

## redeem, redeemer, redemption

### Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:12](#); [9:15](#); [Notes](#); [11:35](#))



## reed

### Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:29](#))

## reject, rejected, rejection

### Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:28](#); [12:17](#); [12:25](#))

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:1](#); [6:6](#); [7:21](#); [12:17](#))

## report, reported, reputation

### Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:17](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:11](#); [3:18](#); [4:1](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#))

# resurrection

## Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

## Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:2](#); [11:35](#))

# return

## Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

## Bible References:

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:1; 11:15](#))

## reveal, revealed, revelation

### Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:8](#); [9:26](#))



## revere, revered, reverence, reverent

### Definition:

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. “Revere” someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [honor](#), [obey](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:15-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- Isaiah 44:17
- Psalms 005:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3372, H3373, H3374, H4172, H6342, H7812, G127, G1788, G2125, G2412, G5399, G5401

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:7](#); [12:28](#))

## reward, prize, deserve,

### Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10 General Notes](#); [10:35](#); [11:26](#))

## right hand

### Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#); [1:13](#); [8:1](#); [10:12](#); [12:2](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:8](#); [1:9](#); [5:13](#); [6:10](#); [7:2](#); [10:38](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:33](#); [12:11](#); [12:23](#))

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:12](#))

## rod

### Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:4](#))

## run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

### Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: \* To “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. \* To “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. \* To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. \* “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. \* Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country.” \* Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” \* The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”\*

(See also: false god, persevere, refuge, [turn](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5295, G5343

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:1](#))



# Sabbath

## Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [rest](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:9](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:1](#); [7:27](#); [8:3](#); [9:9](#); [9:23](#); [9:26](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:14](#); [10:18](#); [10:26](#); [11:4](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#))

# saint

## Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:10](#); [13:24](#))

## Samson

### Facts:

Samson was one of the judges, or deliverers, of Israel. He was from the tribe of Dan.

- God gave Samson superhuman strength, which he used to fight against Israel's enemies, the Philistines.
- Samson was put under a vow to never cut his hair and to never drink wine or any other fermented drink. As long as he kept this vow, God continued to give him strength.
- He finally broke his vow and allowed his hair to be cut, enabling the Philistines to capture him.
- While Samson was in captivity, God enabled him to regain his strength and gave him the opportunity to destroy the temple of the false god Dagon, along with many Philistines.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: deliver, Philistines, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 13:25
- Judges 16:02
- Judges 16:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8123, G4546

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:32](#))

# Samuel

## Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:19
- 1 Samuel 09:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 03:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G4545

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:32](#))

## sanctify, sanctification

### Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), set apart)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:11](#); [9:13](#); [10:10](#); [10:14](#); [10:29](#); [13:12](#))

# Sarah, Sarai

## Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Isaac](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:01** "So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **05:04** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son--he will be the son of promise."
- **05:04** "God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **05:05** "About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G4564

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:11](#))



## Satan, devil, evil one

### Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:14](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), deliver, [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:14](#); [2:3](#); [2:10](#); [5:7](#); [5:9](#); [6:9](#); [7:25](#); [Notes](#); [9:28](#); [11:7](#))

## scepter

### Definition:

The term "scepter" refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as "ruling rod" or "ruler's rod" or "king's rod."

(See also: [authority](#), [Christ](#), [king](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Amos 01:5
- Esther 04:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 01:08
- Numbers 21:18
- Psalms 045:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G4464

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:8](#))

# scroll

## Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, [word of God](#))

## Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:03
- Luke 04:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:7](#))

## Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

### Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: Arabia, Canaan, [Egypt](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:35-37
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Joshua 04:22-24
- Numbers 14:23-25

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**.
- **12:05** Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.”
- **13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H5488, G2063, G2281

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:29](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:11](#))



## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:7](#); [11:6](#); [11:14](#); [12:17](#); [13:14](#))

## send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:14](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#),)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

### Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:15](#); [3:5](#); [7:13](#); [8:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:9](#); [9:14](#); [10:2](#); [12:28](#); [13:10](#))

## sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

### Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:16; 13:4](#))

## shadow, overshadow, shade

### Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), light)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:5](#); [10:1](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), false god, humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:11](#); [10:33](#); [11:16](#); [11:26](#); [12:2](#); [13:13](#))



## shepherd, chief shepherd

### Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

### Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), Canaan, [church](#), [Moses](#), pastor, [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.

- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:20](#))

## sign, proof, reminder

### Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:3](#); [2:17](#); [3:13](#); [3:17](#); [4:15](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [8:12](#); [9:26](#); [9:28](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:17](#); [10:18](#); [10:26](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [12:3](#); [12:4](#); [13:11](#))

## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:1](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:6](#); [2:10](#); [7:5](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#))



## Son of God, the Son

### Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:09** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:05** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:2](#); [1:5](#); [1:8](#); [3:6](#); [4:14](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [6:6](#); [7:3](#); [7:28](#); [10:29](#))

## sons of God, children of God

### Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between human sons and their father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), demon, [son](#), [Son of God](#), ruler, [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 06:02
- Genesis 06:4
- Job 01:06
- Romans 08:14

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:5](#))

## soul, self

### Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:12](#); [6:19](#); [10:38](#); [10:39](#); [12:3](#); [13:17](#))

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), demon, [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:7](#); [1:14](#); [4:12](#); [12:9](#); [12:23](#))

## staff, clubs

### Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:21](#))

## stone, stoning

### Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), commit, crime, [death](#), Lystra, [testimony](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:37; 12:20](#))



## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, [right hand](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:18; 9:17](#))

## subject, be subject to, subjection

### Facts:

A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
- 1 Kings 04:06
- 1 Peter 02:18-20
- Hebrews 02:05
- Proverbs 12:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, H5927, G350, G1379, G1396, G1777, G3663, G5292, G5293

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:5](#); [2:8](#))

## submit, submission, in submission

### Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: [subject](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- 1 Peter 03:01
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:20

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3584, G5226, G5293

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:9](#); [13:17](#))

## suffer, suffering

### Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:04** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:9](#); [2:10](#); [2:18](#); [5:8](#); [9:26](#); [10:32](#); [11:25](#); [13:12](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:12](#); [11:34](#); [11:37](#))

# tabernacle

## Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:2](#); [8:5](#); [9:2](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:11](#); [9:21](#); [13:10](#))



## teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:12](#); [6:2](#); [8:11](#))

## teacher, Teacher

### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: disciple, [preach](#))

### Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: [Hebrews 5:12](#))

## tempt, temptation

### Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:18](#); [4:15](#); [11:37](#))

## tent, tentmakers

### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Canaan, [curtain](#), Paul, Sinai, [tabernacle](#), tent of meeting)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:9](#))

## tenth, tithe

### Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believe](#), [Israel](#), [Levite](#), livestock, [Melchizedek](#), [minister](#), [sacrifice tabernacle](#), temple)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:2](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#))

## test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:8](#); [3:9](#); [11:17](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:5](#); [7:8](#); [7:17](#); [10:15](#); [10:28](#); [11:4](#); [11:39](#); [12:1](#))



## thorn, thorn bush, thistle

### Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

(Go back to: [Hebrews 6:8](#))

## throne, enthroned

### Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), reign)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:8](#); [4:16](#); [8:1](#); [12:2](#))

## time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:13](#); [4:7](#); [4:16](#); [5:12](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:26](#); [11:11](#); [11:15](#); [11:32](#))

# Timothy

## Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

- Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
- The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
- Two books in the New Testament (1 Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [believe](#), [church](#), Greek, [minister](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:02
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- Acts 16:03
- Colossians 01:01
- Philemon 01:01
- Philippians 01:01
- Philippians 02:19

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5095

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:23](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:7](#); [1:14](#); [6:10](#); [8:2](#); [8:6](#); [9:21](#); [10:11](#))

## transgress, transgression

### Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), trespass, [iniquity](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:06
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:2](#); [9:15](#))

## tremble, stagger

### Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:21](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [Hebrews 7:13; 7:14](#))



## tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:33](#))

# trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

## Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

## Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:15](#))

## true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *\_true\_* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *\_true\_* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Hebrews 8:2](#); [9:24](#); [10:22](#); [10:26](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:19](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:13](#))

## turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, leprosy, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:25](#))



## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), wise)

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Hebrews 11:3](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:7](#); [3:15](#); [4:7](#); [12:19](#); [12:26](#))

## watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Hebrews 13:17](#))

## water

### Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(Go back to: [Hebrews 9:19](#); [10:22](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [Hebrews 2:4](#); [10:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:36](#); [13:21](#))

## word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [Hebrews 4:12](#); [6:5](#); [13:7](#))

## work, works, deeds

### Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God's “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:10](#); [3:9](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:10](#); [6:1](#); [6:10](#); [9:14](#); [10:24](#))



## world, worldly

### Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, [godly](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:6](#); [2:5](#); [4:3](#); [9:26](#); [10:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:38](#))

## worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

### Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:3](#); [10:29](#); [11:38](#))

## wrath, fury

### Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [Hebrews 3:11](#); [4:3](#))

# year

## Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

(Go back to: [Hebrews 1:12](#); [3:10](#); [3:17](#); [9:7](#); [9:25](#); [10:1](#); [10:3](#))

## zeal, zealous

### Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: [Hebrews 10:27](#))

## Zion, Mount Zion

### Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [Hebrews 12:22](#))

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman



Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community